"...a comprehensive resource for PC enthusiasts and professionals alike. Packed with the latest speeds and feeds, you'll want to keep this book on-hand as an authoritative technology reference."

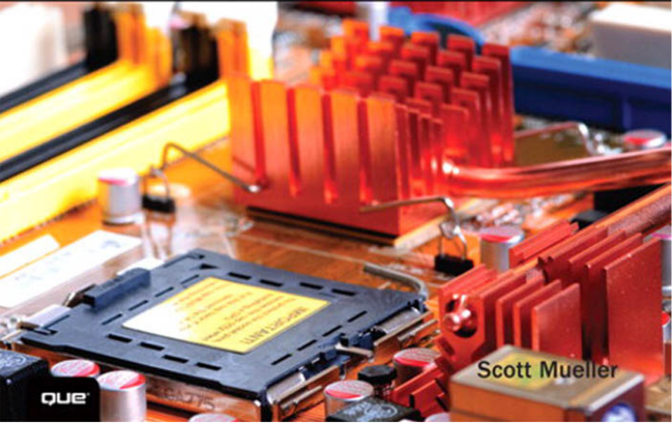
—**Chris Angelini, Managing Editor, *Tom's Hardware***

DVD-ROM
Includes
2 hours of new
how-to video

Scott Mueller's

UPGRADING AND REPAIRING PCs

21st EDITION



Scott Mueller

que

FREE SAMPLE CHAPTER

SHARE WITH OTHERS

UPGRADING AND REPAIRING PCs

21st Edition

Scott Mueller

QUE®
800 East 96th Street,
Indianapolis, Indiana 46240

Contents at a Glance

Introduction 1
1 Development of the PC 5
2 PC Components, Features, and System Design 19
3 Processor Types and Specifications 29
4 Motherboards and Buses 155
5 BIOS 263
6 Memory 325
7 The ATA/IDE Interface 377
8 Magnetic Storage Principles 439
9 Hard Disk Storage 461
10 Flash and Removable Storage 507
11 Optical Storage 525
12 Video Hardware 609
13 Audio Hardware 679
14 External I/O Interfaces 703
15 Input Devices 739
16 Internet Connectivity 775
17 Local Area Networking 799
18 Power Supplies 845
19 Building or Upgrading Systems 929
20 PC Diagnostics, Testing, and Maintenance 975
Index 1035

Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 21st Edition

Copyright © 2013 by Pearson Education, Inc.

All rights reserved. No part of this book shall be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without written permission from the publisher. No patent liability is assumed with respect to the use of the information contained herein. Although every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, the publisher and author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. Nor is any liability assumed for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

ISBN-13: 978-0-7897-5000-6
ISBN-10: 0-7897-5000-7

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data in on file.

Printed in the United States of America

First Printing: March 2013

Trademarks

All terms mentioned in this book that are known to be trademarks or service marks have been appropriately capitalized. Que Publishing cannot attest to the accuracy of this information. Use of a term in this book should not be regarded as affecting the validity of any trademark or service mark.

Warning and Disclaimer

Every effort has been made to make this book as complete and as accurate as possible, but no warranty or fitness is implied. The information provided is on an "as is" basis. The author and the publisher shall have neither liability nor responsibility to any person or entity with respect to any loss or damages arising from the information contained in this book or from the use of the DVD or programs accompanying it.

Bulk Sales

Que Publishing offers excellent discounts on this book when ordered in quantity for bulk purchases or special sales. For more information, please contact

U.S. Corporate and Government Sales
1-800-382-3419
corpsales@pearsontechgroup.com

For sales outside of the U.S., please contact

International Sales
international@pearsoned.com

Editor-in-Chief
Greg Wiegand

Acquisitions Editor
Rick Kughen

Development Editor
Todd Brakke

Managing Editor
Sandra Schroeder

Project Editor
Mandie Frank

Copy Editor
Sheri Cain

Indexer
Erika Millen

Proofreader
Gill Editorial Services

Technical Editor
Chris Crayton

Editorial Assistant
Cindy Teeters

Media Producer
Dan Scherf

Designer
Anne Jones

Compositor
Bronkella Publishing

Contents

Introduction 1

1 Development of the PC 5

- Computer History: Before Personal Computers 5
  - Timeline 5
  - Electronic Computers 10
- Modern Computers 10
  - From Tubes to Transistors 11
  - Integrated Circuits 13
- History of the PC 14
  - Birth of the Personal Computer 14
  - The IBM Personal Computer 15
  - The PC Industry 30 Years Later 16

2 PC Components, Features, and System Design 19

- What Is a PC? 19
  - Who Controls PC Software? 20
  - Who Controls PC Hardware? 23
  - White-Box Systems 26
- System Types 26
- System Components 28

3 Processor Types and Specifications 29

- Microprocessor History 29
  - The First Microprocessor 29
  - PC Processor Evolution 32
  - 16-Bit to 64-Bit Architecture Evolution 34
- Processor Specifications 35
  - Data I/O Bus 42
  - Address Bus 42
  - Internal Registers (Internal Data Bus) 44
  - Processor Modes 44
  - Processor Benchmarks 49
  - Comparing Processor Performance 49
  - Cache Memory 53
- Processor Features 60
  - System Management Mode (SMM) 60
  - Superscalar Execution 61
  - MMX Technology 62
  - Dynamic Execution 64
  - Dual Independent Bus Architecture 65
  - HT Technology 65
  - Multicore Technology 66
  - Hardware-Assisted Virtualization Support 68
- Processor Manufacturing 69
  - Processor Re-Marking 74
  - PGA Chip Packaging 74
  - Single Edge Contact and Single Edge Processor Packaging 75
- Processor Socket and Slot Types 75
  - Socket 478 78
  - Socket LGA775 79
  - Socket LGA1156 80
  - Socket LGA1366 81
  - Socket LGA1155 82
  - Socket LGA2011 83
  - Socket 939 and 940 83
  - Socket AM2/AM2+/AM3/AM3+ 84
  - Socket F (1207FX) 86
  - Socket FM1 86
  - Socket FM2 86
- CPU Operating Voltages 87
- Math Coprocessors (Floating-Point Units) 87
- Processor Bugs and Steppings 88
- Processor Code Names 88
- P1 (086) Processors 89
- P2 (286) Processors 90
- P3 (386) Processors 91
- P4 (486) Processors 92
- P5 (586) Processors 93
  - AMD-K5 96
- Intel P6 (686) Processors 96
  - Pentium Pro Processors 97
  - Pentium II Processors 97
  - Pentium III 99
  - Celeron 100
- Intel Pentium 4 Processors 101
  - Pentium 4 Extreme Edition 104
  - Intel Pentium D and Pentium Extreme Edition 106
- Intel Core Processors 108
  - Intel Core 2 Family 108
  - Intel (Nehalem) Core i Processors 110
- AMD K6 Processors 114
  - NexGen Nx586 114
  - AMD-K6 Series 116
- AMD K7 Processors 117
  - AMD Athlon 117
  - AMD Duron 118

  - AMD Athlon XP 118
  - Athlon MP 120
- AMD K8 Processors 120
  - AMD Athlon 64 and 64 FX 120
  - AMD Sempron 124
  - AMD Athlon X2, 64 X2, and 64 FX 125
- AMD K10 Processors (Phenom, Phenom II, Athlon II, Athlon X2, Sempron) 126
- AMD “Bulldozer” and “Piledriver” FX Processors 128
- AMD Fusion/HSA (Heterogeneous Systems Architecture) APUs 131
- Processor Upgrades 132
- Overclocking 133
  - Quartz Crystals 134
  - Modern PC Clocks 136
  - Overclocking Tips 138
  - Unlocking Cores 139
  - Bus Speeds and Multipliers 140
- Processor Cooling 142
  - Heatsinks 143
  - Liquid Cooling 148
  - Thermally Advantaged Chassis 149
- Processor Troubleshooting Techniques 151

4 Motherboards and Buses 155

- Motherboard Form Factors 155
  - Obsolete Form Factors 156
  - ATX and Other Modern Form Factors 167
- Processor Sockets/Slots 178
- Chipsets 181
  - Chipset Evolution 181
  - Intel Chipsets 183
  - Intel Chipset Model Numbers 184
  - Intel Integrated Graphics Architecture 185
  - AMD Integrated Graphics Architecture 185
  - Traditional North/South Bridge Architecture 185
  - Hub Architecture 187
  - HyperTransport and Other Processor/Chipset Interconnects 188
- Intel’s Early 386/486 Chipsets 190
- Fifth-Generation (P5 Pentium Class) Chipsets 190
- Sixth-Generation (P6 Pentium Pro/II/III Class) Chipsets 192
- Seventh/Eighth-Generation (Pentium 4/D, Core 2, and Core i) Chipsets 195
  - Intel 915 Family 202
  - Intel 925X Family 203
  - Intel 945 Express Family 203
  - Intel 955X and 975X Family 204
  - Intel 96x Series 204
  - Intel 3x and 4x Series Chipsets 205
  - Intel 5x Series Chipsets 208
  - Intel 6x Series Chipsets 211
  - Intel 7x Series Chipsets 213
- Third-Party Chipsets for Intel Processors 215
  - SiS Chipsets 215
  - ULi Electronics Chipsets 215
  - ATI Chipsets 216
  - VIA Chipsets 216
  - NVIDIA Chipsets for Intel Processors 216
- Chipsets for AMD Processors 217
- AMD Athlon Chipsets 217
- AMD Athlon 64 Chipsets 218
  - AMD 8000 (8151) Chipset 219
  - AMD (Formerly ATI) Chipsets for Athlon 64, Sempron, Phenom 220
  - Third-Party Chipsets for AMD Processors 226
  - VIA Chipsets 226
  - SiS Chipsets 227
  - NVIDIA Chipsets 227
- Super I/O Chips 228
- Motherboard Connectors 228
- System Bus Types, Functions, and Features 239
  - The Processor Bus (FSB) 245
- Types of I/O Buses 245
  - The ISA Bus 245
  - The Micro Channel Bus 246
  - The EISA Bus 246
  - Local Buses (VESA, PCI, PCI Express, AGP) 246
- System Resources 254
  - Interrupts 254
  - DMA Channels 259
  - I/O Port Addresses 259
- Motherboard Selection Criteria (Knowing What to Look For) 260
  - Chipset Documentation 262

5 BIOS 263

- BIOS Basics 263
- Motherboard ROM BIOS 267
  - ROM Hardware 267
  - ROM Shadowing 269
  - ROM Chip Types 269
  - ROM BIOS Manufacturers 273
  - BIOS Hardware/Software 274
- Upgrading the BIOS 274
  - Where to Get Your BIOS Update 275
  - Determining Your BIOS Version 275
  - Checking the BIOS Date 275

  - Backing Up Your BIOS 276
  - Backing Up Your BIOS Setup (CMOS RAM) Settings 276
  - Upgrading a Flash BIOS 277
  - Motherboard CMOS RAM Addresses 285
- Preboot Environment 287
- Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) 289
  - UEFI and BIOS Limitations 290
  - UEFI Support 291
- BIOS Setup 292
  - Running or Accessing the BIOS Setup Program 292
  - BIOS Setup Menus 292
  - Maintenance Menu 293
  - Main Menu 294
  - Advanced Menus 295
  - Security Menu 311
  - Power Menu 312
  - Boot Menu (Boot Sequence, Order) 314
  - Exit Menu 315
  - Additional BIOS Setup Features 316
- PnP BIOS 317
  - PnP Device IDs 318
  - ACPI 318
- BIOS/MBR Error Messages 319
  - BIOS Boot Error Messages 320
  - MBR Boot Error Messages 322

6 Memory 325

- Memory Basics 325
  - ROM 327
  - DRAM 327
  - Cache Memory: SRAM 329
- Memory Standards 331
- Speed and Performance 332
  - Fast Page Mode DRAM 335
  - Extended Data Out RAM 336
  - SDRAM 337
  - DDR SDRAM 338
  - DDR2 SDRAM 340
  - DDR3 SDRAM 342
  - DDR4 SDRAM 344
  - RDRAM 345
- Memory Modules 346
  - Registered Modules 351
  - SDR DIMM Details 352
  - DDR DIMM Details 353
  - DDR2 DIMM Details 353
  - DDR3 DIMM Details 353
- Determining a Memory Module's Size and Features 354
- Memory Banks 356
- Memory Module Speed 357
- Parity and ECC 357
  - Parity Checking 359
  - How Parity Checking Works 359
  - ECC 360
- RAM Upgrades 361
  - Upgrade Options and Strategies 362
  - Purchasing Memory 364
  - Replacing Modules with Higher-Capacity Versions 366
  - Installing Memory Modules 366
- Troubleshooting Memory 368
- Memory Defect Isolation Procedures 372
- The System Logical Memory Layout 374

7 The ATA/IDE Interface 377

- An Overview of the IDE Interface 377
  - Precursors to IDE 377
  - IDE Origins 378
  - Origins of ATA 379
- ATA Standards 380
  - ATA-1 (ATA Interface for Disk Drives) 382
  - ATA-2 (ATA Interface with Extensions-2) 382
  - ATA-3 (ATA Interface-3) 383
  - ATA/ATAPI-4 (ATA with Packet Interface Extension-4) 383
  - ATA/ATAPI-5 (ATA with Packet Interface-5) 384
  - ATA/ATAPI-6 (ATA with Packet Interface-6) 385
  - ATA/ATAPI-7 (ATA with Packet Interface-7) 386
  - ATA/ATAPI-8 386
- PATA 387
  - PATA I/O Connector 387
  - PATA I/O Cable 390
  - Longer or Rounded Cables 392
  - PATA Signals 392
  - PATA Dual-Drive Configurations 393
  - PATA PIO Transfer Modes 396
  - PATA DMA Transfer Modes 396
- SATA 398
  - SATA Standards and Performance 398
  - SATA Express 399
  - SATA Cables and Connectors 401
  - eSATA 404
  - SATA Configuration 407
  - Advanced Host Controller Interface (AHCI) 408
  - Non-Volatile Memory Express (NVMe) 409
  - SATA Transfer Modes 409

- ATA Features 410
  - ATA Commands 410
  - ATA Security Mode 411
  - Host Protected Area 412
  - ATAPI 413
- ATA Drive Capacity Limitations 413
  - Prefixes for Decimal and Binary Multiples 414
  - BIOS Limitations 415
  - CHS Versus LBA 416
  - CHS/LBA and LBA/CHS Conversions 417
  - BIOS Commands Versus ATA Commands 418
  - CHS Limitations (the 528MB Barrier) 419
  - CHS Translation (Breaking the 528MB Barrier) 421
  - The 2.1GB and 4.2GB Barriers 423
  - LBA-Assist Translation 425
  - The 8.4GB Barrier 427
  - The 137GB Barrier and Beyond 429
  - Operating System and Other Software Limitations 430
- GPT and the 2.2TB Barrier 432
- PATA/SATA RAID 434
  - Software RAID 436

8 Magnetic Storage Principles 439

- Magnetic Storage 439
- History of Magnetic Storage 439
- How Magnetic Fields Are Used to Store Data 440
- Read/Write Head Designs 443
  - Ferrite 444
  - Metal-In-Gap 444
  - Thin-Film 444
  - Magneto-Resistive Heads 445
  - Giant Magneto-Resistive Heads 446
- Head Sliders 448
- Data-Encoding Schemes 450
  - Frequency Modulation Encoding 451
  - Modified FM Encoding 451
  - Run Length Limited Encoding 452
  - Encoding Scheme Comparisons 453
  - Partial-Response, Maximum-Likelihood Decoders 455
- Capacity Measurements 455
- Areal Density 456
  - Perpendicular Magnetic Recording 458

9 Hard Disk Storage 461

- Definition of a Hard Disk 461
- Hard Drive Advancements 462
- Form Factors 463
  - 5 1/4-Inch Drive 464
  - 3 1/2-Inch Drive 465
  - 2 1/2-Inch Drive 465
  - 1.8-Inch Drive 466
  - 1-Inch Drives 466
- HDD Operation 466
  - The Ultimate HDD Analogy 469
  - Tracks and Sectors 470
  - ECC 472
  - Disk Formatting 477
- Basic HDD Components 482
  - Hard Disk Platters (Disks) 483
  - Recording Media 484
  - Read/Write Heads 485
  - Head Actuator Mechanisms 487
  - Air Filters 494
  - Hard Disk Temperature Acclimation 495
  - Spindle Motors 495
  - Logic Boards 496
  - Cables and Connectors 497
  - Configuration Items 497
- Hard Disk Features 498
  - Capacity 498
  - Performance 500
  - Reliability 504

10 Flash and Removable Storage 507

- Alternative Storage Devices 507
- Flash Memory Devices 507
  - CompactFlash 509
  - SmartMedia 509
  - MultiMediaCard 510
  - SecureDigital 510
  - Sony Memory Stick 510
  - ATA Flash PC Card 511
  - xD-Picture Card 511
  - SSD (Solid-State Drive) 511
  - USB Flash Drives 516
  - Comparing Flash Memory Devices 517
  - SD Cards Speed Class and UHS Speed Class Markings 519
  - File Systems Used by Flash Memory 520
  - Flash Card Readers 520
  - Card Readers 520
  - ReadyBoost Support 521
- Cloud-Based Storage 522
- Floppy Disk Drives 523
- Tape Drives 523

11 Optical Storage 525

- Optical Technology 525
- CD-Based Optical Technology 526
  - CDs: A Brief History 526
  - CD Construction and Technology 527
  - Mass-Producing CDs 527
  - Writable CDs 539
  - MultiRead Specifications 545
  - MultiPlay and MultiAudio 547
- DVD 547
  - DVD History 548
  - DVD Construction and Technology 549
  - DVD Tracks and Sectors 550
  - Handling DVD Errors 554
  - DVD Capacity (Sides and Layers) 555
  - Data Encoding on the DVD Disc 558
  - Recordable DVD Standards 559
  - Multiformat Rewritable DVD Drives 566
- BD 567
- HD-DVD 569
- Optical Disc Formats 570
  - CD Formats 570
  - DVD Formats and Standards 578
  - Optical Disc File Systems 582
- Ripping/Copying Discs 587
  - "For Music Use Only" CD-R/RW Discs 588
  - CD Copy Protection 588
  - CD Digital Rights Management 589
  - DVD and Blu-ray Copy Protection 589
- Optical Drive Performance Specifications 593
  - CD Data Transfer Rate 593
  - CD Drive Speed 593
  - DVD Drive Speed 595
  - Access Time 598
  - Buffer/Cache 598
  - Direct Memory Access and Ultra-DMA 598
  - Interface 598
  - Loading Mechanism 599
  - Other Drive Features 600
- How to Reliably Record Optical Discs 600
  - Booting from a Floppy Disk with Optical Drive Support 601
  - Bootable Optical Discs—El Torito 601
  - LightScribe and LabelFlash 602
- Troubleshooting Optical Drives 602
  - Caring for Optical Media 606
  - Updating the Firmware in an Optical Drive 607

12 Video Hardware 609

- Display Adapters and Monitors 609
- Video Display Adapters 610
  - Video Adapter Types 610
  - Integrated Video/Motherboard Chipsets 611
  - CPUs with Integrated Video 616
  - Video Adapter Components 617
  - Identifying the Video and System Chipsets 619
  - Video RAM 620
  - The DAC 624
- Video Display Interfaces 624
  - The System Interface 624
  - The Display Interface 626
  - TV Display Interfaces 641
- 3D Graphics Accelerators 642
  - How 3D Accelerators Work 642
  - APIs 645
  - Dual-GPU Scene Rendering 648
- Monitors 650
  - Display Specifications 650
  - LCD Technology 661
  - LED Backlit Technology 663
  - CRT Display Technology 663
  - Plasma Display Technology 665
  - LCD and DLP Projectors 666
- Using Multiple Monitors 667
  - Dualview 667
  - Homogeneous Adapters 668
  - Heterogeneous Adapters 668
- Choosing the Best Display Hardware for a Particular Task 668
- Video Troubleshooting and Maintenance 669
  - Troubleshooting Video Cards and Drivers 670
  - Video Drivers 672
  - Maintaining Monitors 672
  - Testing Monitors 673
  - Adjusting Monitors 674
  - Bad Pixels 675
  - Troubleshooting Monitors 676
  - Repairing Monitors 677

13 Audio Hardware 679

- Audio Hardware Concepts and Terms 680
  - The Nature of Sound 680
  - Evaluating the Quality of Your Audio Hardware 680
  - Sampling 681

Early PC Sound Cards 682
  Limitations of Sound Blaster Pro Compatibility 682
  Microsoft Windows and Audio Support 682
  DirectX and Audio Support Hardware 683
  Core Audio APIs for Windows 683
  3D Gaming Audio Standards 684
  Legacy Audio Support Through Virtualization 685
Audio Hardware Features 686
  Basic Connectors 686
  Audio Signal Processing Methods 688
  Advanced Audio Features 688
  Volume Control 690
  MIDI Support Features 691
  Data Compression 692
  Sound Drivers 693
  Sound Cards for Sound Producers 693
Motherboard Chipsets with Integrated Audio 694
  Intel “Azalia” HD Audio 694
Troubleshooting PC Audio Problems 694
  Sound Card and Onboard Audio Problems 695
Speakers 698
  Speaker Selection Criteria 698
  Theater and Surround Sound Considerations 699
Microphones 700

14 External I/O Interfaces 703

Introduction to Input/Output Ports 703
  Serial Versus Parallel 703
  Universal Serial Bus (USB) 704
  IEEE 1394 (FireWire or i.LINK) 718
  Comparing USB and IEEE 1394 (FireWire) 722
Thunderbolt Technology 728
Low-Speed External Connections 729
  Serial Ports 730
  Parallel Ports 734

15 Input Devices 739

Keyboards 739
  Enhanced 101-Key Keyboard 739
  103/104-Key Windows Keyboard 740
Keyboard Technology 742
  Keyswitch Design 742
  The Keyboard Interface 747
  Typematic Functions 749
  Keyboard Scan Codes 749
  International Keyboard Layouts 750
  Keyboard/Mouse Interface Connectors 751
  USB Keyboards 753
  Keyboards with Special Features 754
Keyboard Troubleshooting and Repair 754
  Cleaning a Keyboard 755
Keyboard Recommendations 756
Pointing Devices 757
  Mouse Sensitivity 758
  Ball-Type Mice 758
  Optical Mice 759
  Pointing Device Interface Types 760
  Scroll Wheels 762
  Mouse Troubleshooting 764
  Cleaning Your Mouse 765
  Alternative Pointing Devices 765
Touchscreen Technology 770
Wireless Input Devices 771
  Power Management Features of Wireless Input Devices 772
  Troubleshooting Wireless Input Devices 773

16 Internet Connectivity 775

Internet Connectivity Trends 775
Broadband Internet Access Types 775
  Cable TV 776
  Digital Subscriber Line 779
  Wireless Broadband 783
  Cellular Broadband 3G and 4G Services 783
  Satellite Broadband 784
  ISDN 787
  Leased Lines 788
  Comparing High-Speed Internet Access 789
Dial-Up Modems 790
  56Kbps Modems 791
Internet Connection Security 794
  Having a Backup Plan in Case of Service Interruptions 795
  Sharing Your Internet Connection 795
  Routers for Internet Sharing 796
  Modem/Router Status LEDs 797

17 Local Area Networking 799

Defining a Network 799
  Types of Networks 800
  Requirements for a Network 801
Client/Server Versus Peer Networks 801
  Client/Server Networks 802
  Peer-to-Peer Networks 803
  Comparing Client/Server and Peer-to-Peer Networks 804

Network Architecture Overview 804
  Wired Ethernet 806
  Wireless Ethernet 807
  Bluetooth 813
Hardware Elements of Your Network 814
  NICs for Wired Ethernet Networks 814
  Network Cables for Wired Ethernet 816
  Wired Network Topologies 824
  Switches for Ethernet Networks 827
  Wireless Ethernet Hardware 831
Network Protocols 836
  IP and TCP/IP 836
  IPX and NetBEUI 837
Other Home Networking Solutions 838
  HomePNA 838
  Power Line Networking 839
Putting Your Network Together 840
  Network Adapters 840
  Cables and Connections Between Computers 842
  Switch/Access Point 842

18 Power Supplies 845

The Power Supply 845
Primary Function and Operation 845
  Voltage Rails 846
  The Power Good Signal 848
Power Supply Form Factors 849
  Modern Form Factors 852
Power Switches 866
  ATX and Newer 866
  PC/XT/AT and LPX Power Switches 868
Motherboard Power Connectors 870
  AT/LPX Power Supply Connectors 870
  ATX and ATX12V Motherboard Power Connectors 872
  Backward and Forward Compatibility 885
  Dell Proprietary (Nonstandard) ATX Design 887
Additional Power Connectors 887
  Peripheral Power Connectors 887
  Floppy Power Connectors 888
  Serial ATA Power Connectors 889
  PCI Express Auxiliary Graphics Power Connectors 890
Power Supply Specifications 893
  Power Supply Loading 893
  Power Supply Ratings 895
  Other Power Supply Specifications 896
  Power Factor Correction 898
  SLI-Ready and CrossFireX Certifications 900
  Safety Certifications 900
Power-Use Calculations 901
Power Savings 903
  80 Plus 903
  ENERGY STAR 904
  Advanced Power Management 904
  Advanced Configuration and Power Interface 905
Power Cycling 908
Power Supply Troubleshooting 911
  Overloaded Power Supplies 912
  Inadequate Cooling 913
  Using Digital Multimeters 913
  Specialized Test Equipment 916
Power Supply Recommendations 918
  Modular Cables 919
  Sources for Replacement Power Supplies 919
Power-Protection Systems 919
  Surge Suppressors (Protectors) 921
  Network and Phone Line Surge Protectors 922
  Line Conditioners 922
  Backup Power 922
Real-Time Clock/Nonvolatile RAM (CMOS RAM) Batteries 925
  Modern CMOS Batteries 925
  Obsolete or Unique CMOS Batteries 927
  CMOS Battery Troubleshooting 928

19 Building or Upgrading Systems 929

System Components 929
  Before You Start: How to Decide What to Build 931
  Case and Power Supply 933
  Processor 934
  Motherboard 935
  Memory 936
  I/O Ports 937
  Hard Disk/Solid-State Drives 938
  Removable Storage 939
  Input Devices 939
  Video Card and Display 940
  Audio Hardware 940
  Accessories 941
Hardware and Software Resources 942
System Assembly and Disassembly 942
  Assembly Preparation 943
  Installing the CPU and Heatsink 946
  Installing Memory Modules 952
  Mounting the New Motherboard in the Case 953
  Preparing a Modular Power Supply 958

    Connecting the Power Supply 958
    Connecting I/O and Other Cables to the Motherboard 961
    Installing the Drives 962
    Installing a Video Card 967
    Installing Additional Expansion Cards 969
    Replacing the Cover and Connecting External Cables 969
  System Startup 969
  Installing the OS 971
  Troubleshooting New Installations 972

20 PC Diagnostics, Testing, and Maintenance 975
  PC Diagnostics 975
  Diagnostics Software 975
    The POST 976
    Peripheral Diagnostics 989
    Operating System Diagnostics 989
    Commercial Diagnostics Software 990
    Free/User Supported Diagnostics 991
  The Boot Process 991
    The Hardware Boot Process: Operating System Independent 992
    The DOS Boot Process 996
    The Windows 9x/Me Boot Process 997
    Windows 2000/XP Startup 997
    Windows Vista/7 Startup 998
    Windows 8 Startup 998
  PC Maintenance Tools 999
    Hand Tools 1000
    Safety 1003
    Test Equipment 1004
    Special Tools for the Enthusiast 1009
  Preventive Maintenance 1011
    Active Preventive Maintenance Procedures 1011
    Passive Preventive Maintenance Procedures 1016
  Troubleshooting Tips and Techniques 1021
    Repair or Replace? 1021
    Basic Troubleshooting Steps 1021
    Troubleshooting by Replacing Parts 1022
    Troubleshooting by the Bootstrap Approach 1023
    Problems During the POST 1024
    Problems Running Software 1024
    Problems with Adapter Cards 1025
    Top Troubleshooting Problems 1025

Index 1035

Dedication

In memory of Mark Reddin. His wonderful technical input and insight over the years have made a tremendous impact on this and many other books. You will be missed.

About the Author

Scott Mueller is the president of Mueller Technical Research (MTR), an international research and corporate training firm. Since 1982, MTR has produced the industry's most in-depth, accurate, and effective seminars, books, articles, videos, and FAQs covering PC hardware and data recovery. MTR maintains a client list that includes Fortune 500 companies, the U.S. and foreign governments, major software and hardware corporations, as well as PC enthusiasts and entrepreneurs. Scott's seminars have been presented to several thousands of PC support professionals throughout the world.

Scott personally teaches seminars nationwide covering all aspects of PC hardware (including troubleshooting, maintenance, repair, and upgrade), A+ Certification, and data recovery/forensics. He has a knack for making technical topics not only understandable, but entertaining; his classes are never boring! If you have ten or more people to train, Scott can design and present a custom seminar for your organization.

Although he has taught classes virtually nonstop since 1982, Scott is best known as the author of the longest-running, most popular, and most comprehensive PC hardware book in the world, *Upgrading and Repairing PCs*, which has become the core of an entire series of books, including *Upgrading and Repairing PCs*, *Upgrading and Repairing Laptops*, and *Upgrading and Repairing Windows*.

Scott's premiere work, *Upgrading and Repairing PCs*, has sold more than two million copies, making it by far the most popular and longest-running PC hardware book on the market today. Scott has been featured in *Forbes* magazine and has written several articles for *PC World* magazine, *Maximum PC* magazine, the Scott Mueller Forum, various computer and automotive newsletters, and the Upgrading and Repairing PCs website.

Contact MTR directly if you have a unique book, article, or video project in mind or if you want Scott to conduct a custom PC troubleshooting, repair, maintenance, upgrade, or data-recovery seminar tailored for your organization:

Mueller Technical Research

Web: www.muellertech.com
Email: info@muellertech.com
Forum: www.forum.scottmueller.com

Scott has a forum exclusively for his readers at www.forum.scottmueller.com. Anybody can view the forum, but posting is only available to registered members.

If you have suggestions or comments about the book or new book or article topics you would like to see covered, send them to info@muellertech.com.

Acknowledgments

I must give a *very* special thanks to Rick Kughen at Que. Through the years, Rick is the number-one person responsible for championing this book and the *Upgrading and Repairing* series. I cannot say enough about Rick and what he means to all the *Upgrading and Repairing* books. With all that he's been through on this book, I have a feeling I might be responsible for a few gray hairs. (Sorry!)

I'd also like to thank Todd Brakke for doing the development editing for this edition, which was fairly substantial considering all the rewrites and new material. His excellent tips and suggestions really helped to keep the material concise and up-to-date.

Special thanks also go to Sheri Cain, who helped tremendously with the editing, and to Mandie Frank, for shepherding the manuscripts through a tight publishing schedule. I'd also like to thank the proofreader, illustrator, designer, and indexer, who worked so hard to complete the finished product and get this book out the door! They are a wonderful team that produces clearly the best computer books on the market. I am happy and proud to be closely associated with all the people at Que.

I also want to say thanks to my publisher, Greg Wiegand, who has stood behind all the *Upgrading and Repairing* book and video projects. Greg is a fellow motorcycle enthusiast—someday, hopefully, we can go riding together.

All the people at Que make me feel as if we are on the same team, and they are just as dedicated as I am to producing the best books possible.

I would like to thank both my wife Lynn and my son Emerson for helping to produce the DVD that comes with the book. Emerson did the camera work, and Lynn did all of the editing, rendering, and DVD production using the very machine that you see me build in the video. I hope you enjoy the DVD as much as we enjoyed producing it.

Many readers write me with suggestions and even corrections for the book, for which I am especially grateful. I welcome any and all of your comments and even your criticisms. I take them seriously and apply them to the continuous improvement of this book. Interaction with my readers is the primary force that helps maintain this book as the most up-to-date and relevant work available *anywhere* on the subject of PC hardware.

Finally, I want to thank the thousands of people who have attended my seminars; you have no idea how much I learn from each of you and all of your questions!

Accessing the Media Included with this Book

Don't forget about the free bonus content available online! You'll find a cache of helpful material to go along with this book, including 90 minutes of video. You'll also find complete PDF copies of the 19th and 20th editions, as well as many pages of valuable reference material that's particularly useful for those maintaining legacy equipment.

Register this eBook to unlock the companion files that are included in the Print edition DVD. Follow the steps below:

1. Go to quepublishing.com/register and log in or create a new account.
2. Enter the ISBN: 9780133105377
3. Enter the following code when prompted: URPCSDVD21E
4. Click on the "Access Bonus Content" link in the Registered Products section of your account page, to be taken to the page where your content is available. The video files will play in your browser. Click the links to the 19th and 20th edition PDFs, and other materials to view them, or right-click and choose to save the file to your computer.

Note

If you would like to download the videos to your computer, simply right-click the video and choose Save As. Note that the video files are large and will download slowly.

We Want to Hear from You!

As the reader of this book, *you* are our most important critic and commentator. We value your opinion and want to know what we're doing right, what we could do better, what areas you'd like to see us publish in, and any other words of wisdom you're willing to pass our way.

We welcome your comments. You can email or write to let us know what you did or didn't like about this book—as well as what we can do to make our books better.

Please note that we cannot help you with technical problems related to the topic of this book.

When you write, please be sure to include this book's title and author as well as your name and email address. We will carefully review your comments and share them with the author and editors who worked on the book.

Email: feedback@quepublishing.com

Mail: Que Publishing
ATTN: Reader Feedback
800 East 96th Street
Indianapolis, IN 46240 USA

Reader Services

Visit our website and register this book at quepublishing.com/register for convenient access to any updates, downloads, or errata that might be available for this book.

This page intentionally left blank

Introduction

Welcome to *Upgrading and Repairing PCs,* 21st Edition. Since debuting as the first book of its kind on the market in 1988, no other book on PC hardware has matched the depth and quality of the information found in this tome. This edition continues *Upgrading and Repairing PCs'* role as not only the best-selling book of its type, but also the most comprehensive and complete PC hardware reference available. This book examines PCs in depth, outlines the differences among them, and presents options for configuring each system.

The 21*st* edition of *Upgrading and Repairing PCs* provides you with the in-depth knowledge you need to work with the most recent systems and components and gives you an unexcelled resource for understanding older systems. As with previous editions, we worked to make this book keep pace with the rapid changes in the PC industry so that it continues to be the most accurate, complete, and in-depth book of its kind on the market today.

I wrote this book for all PC enthusiasts who want to know everything about their PCs: how they originated; how they've evolved; how to upgrade, troubleshoot, and repair them; and everything in between. This book covers the full gamut of PC-compatible systems, from the oldest 8-bit machines to the latest high-end 64-bit multicore processors and systems. If you need to know everything about PC hardware from the original to the latest technology on the market today, this book and the accompanying information-packed disc is definitely for you.

Upgrading and Repairing PCs also doesn't ignore the less glamorous PC components. Every part of your PC plays a critical role in its stability and performance. Over the course of this book, you'll find out exactly why your motherboard's chipset might just be the most important part of your PC and what can go wrong when you settle for a run-of-the-mill power supply that can't get enough juice to that monster graphics card you just bought. You'll also find in-depth coverage of technologies such as new Intel Ivy Bridge and AMD Trinity core processors (including those with integrated graphics (including those with integrated graphics), how your choice of processor affects virtualization support, DDR3 memory, high-performance graphics cards based on AMD and NVIDIA GPUs for the fastest 3D gaming and the latest developments in OpenGL and DirectX 3D APIs, SATA 6Gbps and upcoming SATA Express interfaces, Thunderbolt and USB 3.0 interfaces in the latest motherboards, advances in solid-state drives, the benefits of 80 PLUS power supplies, and more—it's all in here, right down to the guts-level analysis of your mouse and keyboard.

Book Objectives

Upgrading and Repairing PCs focuses on several objectives. The primary objective is to help you learn how to maintain, upgrade, and troubleshoot your PC system. To that end, *Upgrading and Repairing PCs* helps you fully understand the family of computers that has grown from the original IBM PC, including all PC-compatible systems. This book discusses all areas of system improvement, such as motherboards, processors, memory, and even case and power-supply improvements. It covers proper system and component care, specifies the most failure-prone items in various PC systems, and tells you how to locate and identify a failing component. You'll learn about powerful diagnostics hardware and software that help you determine the cause of a problem and know how to repair it.

As always, PCs are moving forward rapidly in power and capabilities. Processor performance increases with every new chip design. *Upgrading and Repairing PCs* helps you gain an understanding of all the processors used in PC-compatible computer systems.

This book covers the important differences between major system architectures, from the original Industry Standard Architecture (ISA) to the latest PCI Express interface standards. *Upgrading and Repairing PCs* covers each of these system architectures and their adapter boards to help you make decisions about which type of system you want to buy in the future and help you upgrade and troubleshoot such systems.

The amount of storage space available to modern PCs is increasing geometrically. *Upgrading and Repairing PCs* covers storage options ranging from larger, faster hard drives to state-of-the-art solid-state storage devices.

When you finish reading this book, you will have the knowledge to upgrade, troubleshoot, and repair almost any system and component.

The 21st Edition DVD-ROM

The 21st edition of *Upgrading and Repairing PCs* includes a DVD that contains valuable content that greatly enhances this book!

There's the all-new DVD video with new segments showing a detailed tour of a high-end Z77 chipset motherboard, a detailed comparison of SSD (solid-state drive) to HDD (hard disk drive) technology, plus information about choosing a case and power supply. There are in-depth segments showing how to build a system using these components from scratch, including motherboard and chassis preparation, component installation, and finally cabling, including the dreaded front-panel connections.

The DVD-ROM content includes my venerable Technical Reference material, a repository of reference information that has appeared in previous editions of *Upgrading and Repairing PCs* but has been moved to the disc to make room for coverage of newer technologies. The DVD-ROM also includes the complete 19th edition of this book, the complete 20th edition of the book, a detailed list of acronyms, and much more available in printable PDF format. There's more PC hardware content and knowledge here than you're likely to find from any other single source.

My Website: upgradingandrepairingpcs.com

Don't forget about Que's dedicated *Upgrading and Repairing PCs* website! Here, you'll find a cache of helpful material to go along with the book you're holding. I've loaded this site with tons of material—mine as well as from other authors—ranging from video clips to book content and technology updates.

If you discover that the video on this book's disc isn't enough, you'll find even more of my previously recorded videos on the website. Not to mention that it is the best place to look for information on all of Que's *Upgrading and Repairing* titles.

I also have a private forum (www.forum.scottmueller.com) designed exclusively to support those who have purchased my recent books and DVDs. I use the forum to answer questions and otherwise help my loyal readers. If you own one of my current books or DVDs, feel free to join in and post questions. I endeavor to answer each question personally, but I also encourage knowledgeable members to respond. Anybody can view the forum without registering, but to post a question of your own you need to join. Even if you don't join in, the forum is a tremendous resource because you can still benefit from all the reader questions I have answered over the years.

Be sure to check the informit.com/upgrading website for more information on all my latest books, videos, articles, FAQs, and more!

A Personal Note

When asked which was his favorite Corvette, Dave McLellan, former manager of the Corvette platform at General Motors, always said, “Next year’s model.” Now with the new 21st edition, next year’s model has just become this year’s model, until *next* year that is….

I believe that this book is absolutely the best book of its kind on the market, and that is due in large part to the extensive feedback I have received from both my seminar attendees and book readers. I am so grateful to everyone who has helped me with this book through each edition, as well as all the loyal readers who have been using this book, many of you since the first edition was published. I have had personal contact with many thousands of you in the seminars I have been teaching since 1982, and I enjoy your comments and even your criticisms tremendously. Using this book in a teaching environment has been a major factor in its development. Some of you might be interested to know that I originally began writing this book in early 1985; back then it was self-published and used exclusively in my PC hardware seminars before being professionally published by Que in 1988.

In one way or another, I have been writing and rewriting this book for almost 30 years! In that time, *Upgrading and Repairing PCs* has proven to be not only the first, but also the most comprehensive and yet approachable and easy-to-understand book of its kind. With this new edition, it is even better than ever. Your comments, suggestions, and support have helped this book to become the best PC hardware book on the market. I look forward to hearing your comments after you see this exciting new edition.

—Scott

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter

7

The ATA/IDE Interface

An Overview of the IDE Interface

The interface used to connect disk drives to a PC is typically called IDE (Integrated Drive Electronics); however, the official name of this interface is ATA (AT Attachment). The ATA designation refers to the fact that this interface was originally designed to connect a combined drive and controller directly to the 16-bit bus found in the 1984 vintage IBM PC-AT (Advanced Technology) and compatible computers. The AT bus is otherwise known as the ISA (Industry Standard Architecture) bus. Although ATA is the official name of the interface, IDE is a marketing term originated by some of the drive manufacturers to describe the drive/controller combination used in drives with the ATA interface. Integrated Drive Electronics refers to the fact that the interface electronics or controller is built into the drive and is not a separate board, as it was with earlier drive interfaces. Although the correct name for the particular IDE interface we most commonly use is technically ATA, many persist in using the IDE designation today. If you are being picky, you could say that IDE refers generically to any drive interface in which the controller is built into the drive, whereas ATA refers to the specific implementation of IDE that is used in most PCs.

ATA was originally a 16-bit parallel interface, meaning that 16 bits are transmitted simultaneously down the interface cable. A newer interface called Serial ATA (SATA) was officially introduced in late 2000 and was adopted in desktop systems starting in 2003 and in laptops starting in late 2005. SATA sends one bit down the cable at a time, enabling thinner and smaller cables to be used, as well as providing higher performance due to the higher cycling speeds it enables. Although SATA is a completely different physical interface design, it is backward compatible on the software level with Parallel ATA (PATA). Throughout this book, *ATA* refers to both the parallel and serial versions. *PATA* refers specifically to the parallel version, and *SATA* refers specifically to the serial version.

Precursors to IDE

Several types of hard disk interfaces have been used for PC hard disks over the years, as shown in Table 7.1. As time has passed, the number of choices has increased; however, many of the older interface standards are obsolete and no longer viable in newer systems.

Table 7.1 PC Drive Interfaces

Interface	When Used
ST-506/412	1978–1989 (obsolete)
ESDI	1983–1991 (obsolete)
Non-ATA IDE	1987–1993 (obsolete)
SCSI	1986–present
PATA (IDE)	1986–present
SATA	2003–present

ST = Seagate Technology
ESDI = Enhanced Small Device Interface
IDE = Integrated Drive Electronics
SCSI = Small Computer Systems Interface
ATA = AT (Advanced Technology) Attachment

Of these interfaces, only ST-506/412 and ESDI are what you could call true disk-controller-to-drive interfaces, and they are obsolete. Non-ATA versions of IDE were used primarily in the IBM PS/2 systems and are also obsolete. Current SCSI, ATA, and SATA are system-level interfaces that usually internally incorporate a chipset-based controller interface. For example, many SCSI, PATA, and SATA drives incorporate the same basic controller circuitry inside the actual drive. The SCSI interface then adds another layer that connects between the drive controller and the PCI (or ISA) bus, whereas PATA and SATA have a more direct connection from the controller to the AT bus attachment interface. Despite their differences, we call a SCSI, PATA, or SATA card a host interface adapter instead of a controller card because the actual controllers are inside the drives. Virtually all modern disk drives use SATA or PATA interfaces to connect to a system.

IDE Origins

Any drive with an integrated controller could be called an IDE drive, although normally when we say IDE, we really mean the specific version of IDE called ATA. No matter what you call it, combining the drive and controller greatly simplifies installation because no separate power or signal cables run from the controller to the drive. Also, when the controller and drive are assembled as a unit, the number of total components is reduced, signal paths are shorter, and the electrical connections are more noise-resistant. This results in a more reliable and less expensive design than is possible when a separate controller, connected to the drive by cables, is used.

Placing the controller, including the digital-to-analog encoder/decoder (endec), on the drive offers an inherent reliability advantage over interfaces with separate controllers such as ST506 and ESDI. Reliability is increased because the data encoding, from digital to analog, is performed directly on the drive in a tight noise-free environment. The timing-sensitive analog information does not have to travel along crude ribbon cables that are likely to pick up noise and insert propagation delays into the signals. The integrated configuration enables increases in the clock rate of the encoder and the storage density of the drive.

The earliest IDE drives were called hardcards and were nothing more than hard disks and controller cards bolted directly together and plugged into a slot as a single unit. Companies such as the Plus Development Division of Quantum took small 3 1/2-inch drives (either ST-506/412 or ESDI) and attached them directly to a standard controller card. The drive/controller assembly then was plugged into an ISA bus slot as though it were a normal disk controller card. Unfortunately, the mounting of a heavy, vibrating hard disk in an expansion slot with nothing but a single screw to hold it in place left a lot to be desired—not to mention the physical interference with adjacent cards, because many of these units were much thicker than a controller card alone.

Several companies got the idea to redesign the controller to replace the logic board assembly on a standard hard disk and then mount it in a standard drive bay just like any other drive. Because the built-in controller in these drives still needed to plug directly into the expansion bus just like any other controller, a cable was run between the drive and one of the slots. This was the origin of IDE.

Origins of ATA

Control Data Corporation (CDC; its disk drive division was later called Imprimis), Western Digital, and Compaq actually created what could be called the first ATA IDE interface drive and were the first to establish the 40-pin ATA connector pinout. The first ATA IDE drive was a 5 1/4-inch half-height CDC Wren II 40MB drive with an integrated WD controller and was initially used in the first Compaq 386 systems in 1986. I remember seeing this drive for the first time in 1986 at the fall COMDEX show. Besides the (at the time) unique 40-pin ribbon cable, I remember being surprised by the green activity LED on the front bezel. (Most drives up until then used red LEDs.)

Compaq was the first to incorporate a special bus adapter in its system to adapt the 98-pin AT-bus (also known as ISA) edge connector on the motherboard to a smaller 40-pin, header-style connector into which the drive would plug. The 40-pin connector was all that was necessary because it was known that a disk controller never would need more than 40 of the ISA bus lines. Smaller 2 1/2-inch ATA drives found in laptop computers use a superset 44-pin or 50-pin connection, which includes additional pins for power and configuration. The pins from the original ISA bus used in ATA are the only signal pins required by a standard-type AT hard disk controller. For example, because a primary AT-style disk controller uses only interrupt request (IRQ) line 14, the primary motherboard ATA connector supplies only that IRQ line; no other IRQ lines are necessary. Even if your ATA interface is integrated within the motherboard chipset South Bridge or I/O Controller Hub chip (as it would be in newer systems) and runs at higher bus speeds, the pinout and functions of the pins are still the same as the original design taken right off the ISA bus.

◀◀ See the Chapter 4 section, "Motherboard Connectors," **p. 228**.

◀◀ See the Chapter 4 section, "The ISA Bus," **p. 245**.

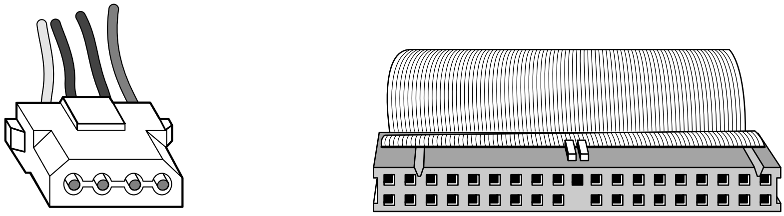
Note

Many people who use systems with ATA connectors on the motherboard believe that a hard disk controller is built into their motherboards, but in a technical sense the controller is actually in the drive. Although the integrated ATA ports on a motherboard often are referred to as controllers, they are more accurately called *host adapters* (although you'll rarely hear this term). You can think of a host adapter as a device that connects a controller to a bus.

Eventually, the 40-pin ATA connector and drive interface design was placed before one of the ANSI standards committees that, in conjunction with drive manufacturers, ironed out some deficiencies, tied up some loose ends, and then published what was known as the CAM ATA (Common Access Method AT Attachment) interface. The CAM ATA Committee was formed in October 1988, and the first working document of the ATA interface was introduced in March 1989. Before the CAM ATA standard, many companies, such as Conner Peripherals (which later merged with Seagate Technology), made proprietary changes to the original interface as designed by CDC. As a result, many older ATA drives from the late 1980s are difficult to integrate into a dual-drive setup because minor differences in the interfaces can cause compatibility problems among the drives. By the early 1990s, most drive manufacturers brought their drives into full compliance with the official standard, which eliminated many of these compatibility problems.

Some areas of the ATA standard have been left open for vendor-specific commands and functions. These vendor-specific commands and functions are the reason it is important to use the OEM-specific programs for testing ATA drives. To work to full capability, the diagnostic program you are using typically must know the specific vendor-unique commands for remapping defects. Unfortunately, these and other specific drive commands differ from OEM to OEM, thus clouding the standard somewhat. Most ATA drive manufacturers publish their drive-formatting/initialization software on their websites.

As I noted at the start of this chapter, PATA is a 16-bit parallel interface that has been largely phased out in favor of the serial interface of SATA. SATA's thinner and smaller cables provide higher performance due to the higher cycling speeds allowed and are considerably easier to work with than the wide PATA ribbon cables. Figure 7.1 shows how the power and data cables SATA uses compare in size to those PATA uses.



PATA power cable

PATA data cable

SATA power cable

SATA data cable

FIGURE 7.1 SATA data cables are much smaller than those used by PATA, whereas the power cables are similar in size.

ATA Standards

Today, the ATA interface is controlled by an independent group of representatives from major PC, drive, and component manufacturers. This group is called Technical Committee T13 (www.t13.org) and is responsible for all standards relating to the Parallel and Serial ATA storage interfaces. T13 is a part of the International Committee on Information Technology Standards (INCITS), which operates under rules approved by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI), a governing body that sets rules that control nonproprietary standards in the computer industry as well as many other industries. A second group called the Serial ATA International Organization (www.serialata.org) was formed to initially create the SATA standards, which are then passed on to the T13 Committee for refinement and official publication under ANSI. The ATA-7 and ATA-8 standards incorporate both parallel and serial interfaces.

The rules these committees operate under are designed to ensure that voluntary industry standards are developed by the consensus of people and organizations in the affected industry. INCITS specifically develops information processing system standards, whereas ANSI approves the process under which these standards are developed and then publishes them. Because T13 is essentially a public organization, all the working drafts, discussions, and meetings of T13 are open for all to see.

Copies of any of the published standards can be purchased from ANSI (www.ansi.org) or the IHS Standards Store (formerly Global Engineering Documents, http://global.ihs.com). Draft versions of the standards can be downloaded from the T13 Committee or Serial ATA International Organization (SATA-IO) website.

Each newer version of ATA is backward compatible with the previous versions. In other words, older ATA-1 and ATA-2 devices work fine on ATA-7 and ATA-8 interfaces. ATA-7 and ATA-8 include both PATA and SATA. Newer versions of ATA are normally built on older versions, and with few exceptions can be thought of as extensions of the previous versions. This means that ATA-8, for example, is generally considered equal to ATA-7 with the addition of some features.

Table 7.2 breaks down the various ATA standards. The following sections describe recent ATA versions in more detail.

Table 7.2 ATA Standards

Standard	Proposed	Published	Withdrawn	PIO Modes	DMA Modes	UDMA Modes	Parallel Speed (MBps)	Serial Speed (MBps)	Features
ATA-1	1988	1994	1999	0–2	0	—	8.33	—	Drives support up to 136.9GB; BIOS issues not addressed.
ATA-2	1993	1996	2001	0–4	0–2	—	16.67	—	Faster PIO modes; CHS/LBA BIOS translation defined up to 8.4GB; PC-Card.
ATA-3	1995	1997	2002	0–4	0–2	—	16.67	—	S.M.A.R.T.; improved signal integrity; LBA support mandatory; eliminated single-word DMA modes.
ATA-4	1996	1998	2012	0–4	0–2	0–2	33.33	—	Ultra-DMA modes; ATAPI Packet Interface; BIOS support up to 136.9GB.
ATA-5	1998	2000	—	0–4	0–2	0-4	66.67	—	Faster UDMA modes; 80-pin cable with auto-detection.
ATA-6	2000	2002	—	0–4	0–2	0-5	100	—	100MBps UDMA mode; extended drive and BIOS support up to 144PB.
ATA-7	2001	2004	—	0–4	0–2	0-6	133	150	133MBps UDMA mode; SATA.
ATA-8	2004	—	—	0–4	0–2	0-6	133	600	Minor revisions for PATA, includes SATA 2.x and 3.x.

S.M.A.R.T. = Self-Monitoring, Analysis, and Reporting Technology

ATAPI = AT Attachment Packet Interface

MB = Megabyte; million bytes

GB = Gigabyte; billion bytes

PB = Petabyte; quadrillion bytes

CHS = Cylinder, Head, Sector

LBA = Logical block address

PIO = Programmed I/O

DMA = direct memory access

UDMA = Ultra DMA (direct memory access)

ATA-1 (ATA Interface for Disk Drives)

ATA-1 defined the original ATA interface, which was an integrated bus interface between disk drives and host systems based on the ISA (AT) bus. These major features were introduced and documented in the ATA-1 specification:

- 40/44-pin connectors and cabling
- Master/slave or cable select drive configuration options
- Signal timing for basic Programmed I/O (PIO) and direct memory access (DMA) modes
- Cylinder, head, sector (CHS) and logical block address (LBA) drive parameter translations supporting drive capacities up to 2^{28}–2^{20} (267,386,880) sectors, or 136.9GB

Although ATA-1 had been in use since 1986, work on turning it into an official standard began in 1988 under the Common Access Method (CAM) committee. The ATA-1 standard was finished and officially published in 1994 as "ANSI X3.221-1994, AT Attachment Interface for Disk Drives." ATA-1 was officially withdrawn as a standard on August 6, 1999.

Although ATA-1 supported theoretical drive capacities up to 136.9GB (2^{28}–2^{20} = 267,386,880 sectors), it did not address BIOS limitations that stopped at 528MB (1024 × 16 × 63 = 1,032,192 sectors). The BIOS limitations would be addressed in subsequent ATA versions because, at the time, no drives larger than 528MB existed.

ATA-2 (ATA Interface with Extensions-2)

ATA-2 was a major upgrade to the original ATA standard. Perhaps the biggest change was almost a philosophical one. ATA-2 was updated to define an interface between host systems and storage devices in general and not only disk drives. The major features added to ATA-2 compared to the original ATA standard include the following:

- Faster PIO and DMA transfer modes
- Support for power management
- Support for removable devices
- PCMCIA (PC Card) device support
- `Identify Drive` command that reports more information
- Defined standard CHS/LBA translation methods for drives up to 8.4GB in capacity

The most important additions in ATA-2 were the support for faster PIO and DMA modes, as well as methods to enable BIOS support up to 8.4GB. The BIOS support was necessary because although ATA-1 was designed to support drives of up to 136.9GB in capacity, the PC BIOS could originally handle drives of up to 528MB. Adding parameter-translation capability now allowed the BIOS to handle drives up to 8.4GB. This is discussed in more detail later in this chapter.

ATA-2 also featured improvements in the `Identify Drive` command that enabled a drive to tell the software exactly what its characteristics are; this is essential for both Plug and Play (PnP) and compatibility with future revisions of the standard.

ATA-2 was also known by unofficial marketing terms, such as Fast-ATA or Fast-ATA-2 (Seagate/Quantum) and EIDE (Enhanced IDE, Western Digital).

Although work on ATA-2 began in 1993, the standard was not officially published until 1996 as "ANSI X3.279-1996 AT Attachment Interface with Extensions." ATA-2 was officially withdrawn in 2001.

ATA-3 (ATA Interface-3)

ATA-3 was a comparatively minor revision to the ATA-2 standard that preceded it. It consisted of a general cleanup of the specification and had mostly minor clarifications and revisions. The most major changes included the following:

- Eliminated single-word (8-bit) DMA transfer protocols
- Added S.M.A.R.T. (Self-Monitoring, Analysis, and Reporting Technology) support for prediction of device performance degradation
- Made LBA mode support mandatory (previously, it had been optional)
- Added ATA Security mode, allowing password protection for device access
- Provided recommendations for source and receiver bus termination to solve noise issues at higher transfer speeds

ATA-3 built on ATA-2, adding improved reliability, especially of the faster PIO mode 4 transfers; however, ATA-3 did not define faster modes. ATA-3 did add a simple password-based security scheme, more sophisticated power management, and S.M.A.R.T. This enables a drive to keep track of problems that might result in a failure and thus avoid data loss. S.M.A.R.T. is a reliability prediction technology that IBM initially developed.

Work on ATA-3 began in 1995, and the standard was finished and officially published in 1997 as "ANSI X3.298-1997, AT Attachment 3 Interface." ATA-3 was officially withdrawn in 2002.

ATA/ATAPI-4 (ATA with Packet Interface Extension-4)

ATA-4 included several important additions to the standard. It included the Packet Command feature known as the *AT Attachment Packet Interface* (ATAPI), which allowed devices such as CD-ROM and CD-RW drives, LS-120 SuperDisk floppy drives, Zip drives, tape drives, and other types of storage devices to be attached through a common interface. Until ATA-4 came out, ATAPI was a separately published standard. ATA-4 also added the 33MB per second (MBps) transfer mode known as Ultra-DMA or Ultra-ATA. ATA-4 is backward compatible with ATA-3 and earlier definitions of the ATAPI.

Work on ATA-4 began in 1996, and the standard was finished and officially published in 1998 as "ANSI NCITS 317-1998, AT Attachment - 4 with Packet Interface Extension." ATA-4 was officially withdrawn in 2012.

The major revisions added in ATA-4 were as follows:

- Ultra-DMA (UDMA)or Ultra-ATA/33) transfer modes up to Mode 2, which is 33MBps (called UDMA/33 or Ultra-ATA/33)
- Integral ATAPI support
- Advanced power management support
- An optional 80-conductor, 40-pin cable defined for improved noise resistance
- Host protected area (HPA) support
- Compact Flash Adapter (CFA) support
- Enhanced BIOS support for drives over 9.4ZB (zettabytes or trillion gigabytes) in size (even though ATA was still limited to 136.9GB)

The speed and level of ATA support in your system is mainly dictated by your motherboard chipset. Most motherboard chipsets come with a component called either a South Bridge or an I/O Controller

Hub that provides the ATA interface (as well as other functions) in the system. Check the specifications for your motherboard or chipset to see whether yours supports the faster ATA/33, ATA/66, ATA/100, or ATA/133 mode. One indication is to enter the BIOS Setup, put the hard disk on manual parameter settings (user defined), and see which (if any) Ultra-DMA modes are listed. Most boards built in 1998 support ATA/33. In 2000 they began to support ATA/66, and by late 2000 most started supporting ATA/100. ATA/133 support became widespread in mid-2002.

◀◀ See the Chapter 4 section, "Chipsets," **p. 181**.

ATA-4 made ATAPI support a full part of the ATA standard; therefore, ATAPI was no longer an auxiliary interface to ATA but merged completely within it. Thus, ATA-4 promoted ATA for use as an interface for many other types of devices. ATA-4 also added support for new Ultra-DMA modes (also called Ultra-ATA) for even faster data transfer. The highest-performance mode, called UDMA/33, had 33MBps bandwidth—twice that of the fastest programmed I/O mode or DMA mode previously supported. In addition to the higher transfer rate, because UDMA modes relieve the load on the processor, further performance gains were realized.

An optional 80-conductor cable (with cable select) is defined for UDMA/33 transfers. Although this cable was originally defined as optional, it would later be required for the faster ATA/66, ATA/100, and ATA/133 modes in ATA-5 and later.

Support for a reserved area on the drive called the HPA was added via an optional `SET MAX ADDRESS` command. This enables an area of the drive to be reserved for recovery software.

Also included was support for queuing commands, similar to those provided in SCSI-2. This enabled better multitasking as multiple programs request ATA transfers.

Another standard approved by the T13 committee in 1998 was "ANSI NCITS 316-1998 1394 to AT Attachment - Tailgate," which is a bridge protocol between the IEEE 1394 (i.LINK/FireWire) bus and ATA that enables ATA drives to be adapted to FireWire. A tailgate is an adapter device (basically a small circuit board) that converts IEEE 1394 (i.LINK or FireWire) to ATA, essentially allowing ATA drives to be plugged into a FireWire bus. This enabled vendors to quickly develop IEEE 1394 (FireWire) external drives for backup and high-capacity removable data storage. Inside almost any external FireWire drive enclosure you will find the tailgate device and a standard ATA drive.

▶▶ See the Chapter 14 section, "IEEE 1394 (FireWire or i.LINK)," **p. 718**.

ATA/ATAPI-5 (ATA with Packet Interface-5)

ATA-5 was built on the previous ATA-4 interface. ATA-5 includes Ultra-ATA/66 (also called *Ultra-DMA* or *UDMA/66*), which doubles the Ultra-ATA burst transfer rate by reducing setup times and increasing the clock rate. The faster clock rate increases interference, which causes problems with the standard 40-pin cable used by ATA and Ultra-ATA. To eliminate noise and interference, the newer 40-pin, 80-conductor cable was made mandatory for drives running in UDMA/66 or faster modes. This cable adds 40 additional ground lines between each of the original 40 ground and signal lines, which helps shield the signals from interference. Note that this cable works with older, non-Ultra-ATA devices as well because it still has the same 40-pin connectors.

Work on ATA-5 began in 1998, and the standard was finished and officially published in 2000 as "ANSI NCITS 340-2000, AT Attachment - 5 with Packet Interface."

The major additions in the ATA-5 standard include the following:

- Ultra-DMA (UDMA) transfer modes up to Mode 4, which is 66MBps (called UDMA/66 or Ultra-ATA/66).
- The 80-conductor cable now mandatory for UDMA/66 operation.

- Automatic detection of 40- or 80-conductor cables.
- UDMA modes faster than UDMA/33 enabled only if an 80-conductor cable is detected.

The 40-pin, 80-conductor cables support the cable select feature and have color-coded connectors. The blue (end) connector should be connected to the ATA host interface (usually the motherboard). The black (opposite end) connector is known as the *master position*, which is where the primary drive plugs in. The gray (middle) connector is for slave devices.

To use either the UDMA/33 or the UDMA/66 mode, your ATA interface, drive, BIOS, and cable must be capable of supporting the mode you want to use. The operating system also must be capable of handling direct memory access. Windows 95 OSR2 and later versions are ready out of the box, but older versions of Windows 95 and NT (prior to Service Pack 3) require additional or updated drivers to fully exploit these faster modes. Contact the motherboard or system vendor for the latest drivers.

For reliability, Ultra-DMA modes incorporate an error-detection mechanism known as *cyclical redundancy checking* (CRC). CRC is an algorithm that calculates a checksum used to detect errors in a stream of data. Both the host (controller) and the drive calculate a CRC value for each Ultra-DMA transfer. After the data is sent, the drive calculates a CRC value, and this is compared to the original host CRC value. If a difference is reported, the host might be required to select a slower transfer mode and retry the original request for data.

ATA/ATAPI-6 (ATA with Packet Interface-6)

ATA-6 includes Ultra-ATA/100 (also called Ultra-DMA or UDMA/100), which increases the Ultra-ATA burst transfer rate by reducing setup times and increasing the clock rate. As with ATA-5, the faster modes require the improved 80-conductor cable. Using the ATA/100 mode requires both a drive and motherboard interface that supports that mode.

Work on ATA-6 began in 2000, and the standard was finished and officially published in 2002 as "ANSI NCITS 361-2002, AT Attachment - 6 with Packet Interface."

The major changes or additions in the standard include the following:

- Ultra-DMA (UDMA) Mode 5 added, which allows 100MBps (called UDMA/100, Ultra-ATA/100, or just ATA/100) transfers.
- Sector count per command increased from 8 bits (256 sectors, or 131KB) to 16 bits (65,536 sectors, or 33.5MB), allowing larger files to be transferred more efficiently.
- LBA addressing extended from 228 to 248 (281,474,976,710,656) sectors, supporting drives up to 144.12PB (petabytes = quadrillion bytes). This feature is often referred to as 48-bit LBA or greater than 137GB support by vendors; Maxtor referred to this feature as Big Drive.
- CHS addressing was made obsolete; drives must use 28-bit or 48-bit LBA addressing only.

Besides adding the 100MBps UDMA Mode 5 transfer rate, ATA-6 extended drive capacity greatly, and just in time. ATA-5 and earlier standards supported drives of up to only 137GB in capacity, which became a limitation as larger drives were becoming available. Commercially available 3 1/2-inch drives exceeding 137GB were introduced in 2001, but they were originally available only in SCSI versions because SCSI doesn't have the same limitations as ATA. With ATA-6, the sector addressing limit has been extended from 2^{28} sectors to 2^{48} sectors. What this means is that LBA addressing previously could use only 28-bit numbers, but with ATA-6, LBA addressing can use larger 48-bit numbers if necessary. With 512 bytes per sector, this raises the maximum supported drive capacity to 144.12PB. That is equal to more than 144.12 quadrillion bytes! Note that the 48-bit addressing is optional and necessary only for drives larger than 137GB. Drives 137GB or smaller can use either 28-bit or 48-bit addressing.

ATA/ATAPI-7 (ATA with Packet Interface-7)

Work on ATA-7, which began late in 2001, was completed and officially published in 2004. As with the previous ATA standards, ATA-7 is built on the standard that preceded it (ATA-6), with some additions.

The primary additions to ATA-7 include the following:

- Ultra-DMA (UDMA) Mode 6 was added. This allows for 133MBps transfers (called UDMA/133, Ultra-ATA/133, or just ATA/133). As with UDMA Mode 5 (100MBps) and UDMA Mode 4 (66MBps), the use of an 80-conductor cable is required.
- Added support for long physical sectors. This allows a device to be formatted so that there are multiple logical sectors per physical sector. Each physical sector stores an ECC field, so long physical sectors allow increased format efficiency with fewer ECC bytes used overall.
- Added support for long logical sectors. This enables additional data bytes to be used per sector (520 or 528 bytes instead of 512 bytes) for server applications. Devices using long logical sectors are not backward compatible with devices or applications that use 512-byte sectors, such as standard desktop and laptop systems.
- SATA 1.0 incorporated as part of the ATA-7 standard. This includes the SATA physical interconnection as well as the related features and commands.
- The ATA-7 document split into three volumes. Volume 1 covers the command set and logical registers, which apply to both Serial and Parallel ATA. Volume 2 covers the parallel transport protocols and interconnects (PATA), and Volume 3 covers the serial transport protocols and interconnects (SATA).

The ATA/133 transfer mode was originally proposed by Maxtor, and only a few other drive and chipset manufacturers adopted it. Among the chipset manufacturers, VIA, ALi, and SiS added ATA/133 support to their chipsets, prior to moving on to SATA, but Intel decided from the outset to skip ATA/133 in its chipsets in lieu of adding SATA (150MBps or 300MBps). This means the majority of systems that utilize PATA do not support ATA/133; however, all ATA/133 drives do work in ATA/100 mode.

ATA/ATAPI-8

Work on ATA-8 began in 2004, and some initial parts of the standard were published in 2006 and 2008. Other parts are still in progress and continue to be revised as of 2013. As with the previous ATA standards, ATA-8 is built on the standard that preceded it, with some additions. As with the previous version, ATA-8 includes SATA but adds the newer 2.x and 3.x versions of the SATA specification.

The primary features added to ATA-8 include the following:

- The inclusion of SATA 2.x and 3.x for serial transport (physical) and command set functions
- The replacement of read long/write long functions
- Improved HPA management via additional HPA-related commands
- Defined `IDENTIFY DEVICE` word 217 to report drive rotational speed (rpm), where a value of 1 indicates nonrotating media (solid-state drive)
- Addition of the `TRIM` command for flash-based solid-state drives (SSDs). This allows the system to inform an SSD which blocks are no longer in use so they can be erased in preparation for future writes

As the development of ATA progresses, it is expected that newer features designed by the SATA-IO committee will be incorporated.

PATA

Parallel ATA was the most widely used drive interface for many years; however, currently it has been almost completely replaced by SATA for new systems. Even so, some new motherboards and drives are still available with PATA support, and many older systems, motherboards, and drives still in service use PATA as well. PATA has unique specifications and requirements regarding the physical interface, cabling, and connectors compared to SATA. The following sections detail the unique features of PATA.

PATA I/O Connector

The PATA interface connector is normally a 40-pin header-type connector with pins spaced 0.1 inch (2.54mm) apart. Generally, it is keyed to prevent the possibility of installing it upside down (see Figures 7.2 and 7.3). To create a keyed connector, the manufacturer usually removes pin 20 from the male connector and blocks pin 20 on the female cable connector, which prevents the user from installing the cable backward. Some cables also incorporate a protrusion on the top of the female cable connector that fits into a notch in the shroud surrounding the mating male connector on the device. The use of keyed connectors and cables is highly recommended. Plugging an ATA cable in backward normally doesn't cause permanent damage; however, it can lock up the system and prevent it from running.

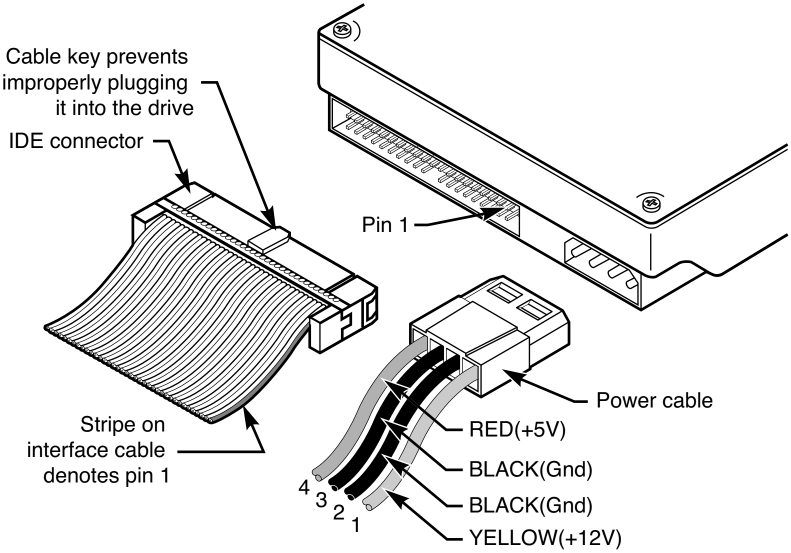


FIGURE 7.2 Typical PATA (IDE) hard drive connectors.

Table 7.3 shows the standard 40-pin PATA (IDE) interface connector pinout.

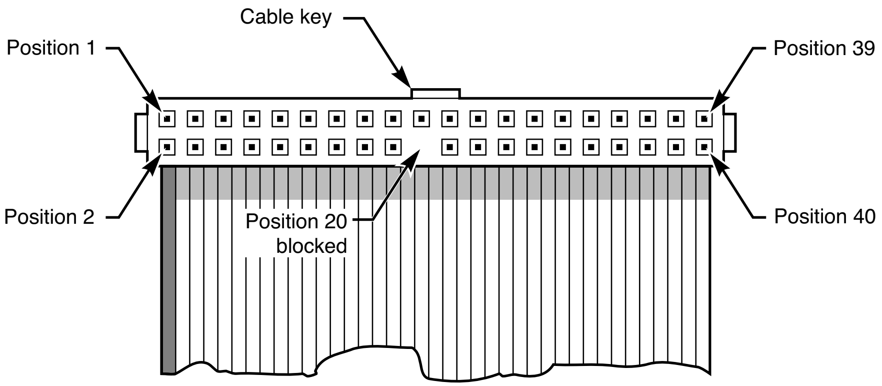


FIGURE 7.3 PATA (IDE) 40-pin interface connector detail.

Table 7.3 Pinout for the 40-Pin PATA Connector

Signal Name	Pin	Pin	Signal Name
-RESET	1	2	GROUND
Data Bit 7	3	4	Data Bit 8
Data Bit 6	5	6	Data Bit 9
Data Bit 5	7	8	Data Bit 10
Data Bit 4	9	10	Data Bit 11
Data Bit 3	11	12	Data Bit 12
Data Bit 2	13	14	Data Bit 13
Data Bit 1	15	16	Data Bit 14
Data Bit 0	17	18	Data Bit 15
GROUND	19	20	KEY (pin missing)
DRQ 3	21	22	GROUND
-IOW	23	24	GROUND
-IOR	25	26	GROUND
I/O CH RDY	27	28	CSEL:SPSYNC[1]
-DACK 3	29	30	GROUND
IRQ 14	31	32	Reserved[2]
Address Bit 1	33	34	-PDIAG
Address Bit 0	35	36	Address Bit 2
-CS1FX	37	38	-CS3FX
-DA/SP	39	40	GROUND

1 Pin 28 is usually cable select, but some older drives could use it for spindle synchronization between multiple drives.

2 Pin 32 was defined as -IOCS16 in ATA-2 but is no longer used.

Note that - preceding a signal name (such as -RESET) indicates the signal is "active low."

The 2 1/2-inch drives found in notebook/laptop-size computers typically use a smaller unitized 50-pin header connector with pins spaced only 2.0mm (0.079 inches) apart. The main 40-pin part of the connector is the same as the standard PATA connector (except for the physical pin spacing), but there are added pins for power and jumpering. The cable that plugs into this connector typically has 44 pins, carrying power as well as the standard ATA signals. The jumper pins usually have a jumper on them (the jumper position controls cable select, master, or slave settings). Figure 7.4 shows the unitized 50-pin connector used on the 2 1/2-inch PATA drives in laptop or notebook computers.

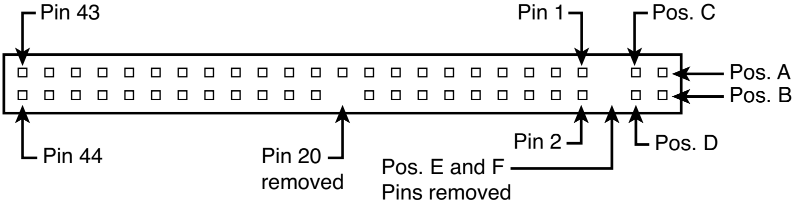


FIGURE 7.4 The 50-pin unitized PATA connector detail (used on 2 1/2-inch notebook/laptop PATA drives with a 44-pin cable).

Note the jumper pins at positions A–D; also notice that the pins at positions E and F are removed. A jumper usually is placed between positions B and D to set the drive for cable select operation. On this connector, pin 41 provides +5V power to the drive logic (circuit board), pin 42 provides +5V power to the motor (2 1/2-inch drives use 5V motors, unlike larger drives that typically use 12V motors), and pin 43 provides a power ground. The last pin (44) is reserved and not used.

Table 7.4 shows the 50-pin unitized PATA interface connector pinout as used on most 2 1/2-inch (laptop or notebook computer) drives.

Table 7.4 The 50-Pin Unitized PATA 2 1/2-Inch (Notebook/Laptop Drive) Connector Pinout

Signal Name	Pin	Pin	Signal Name
Jumper pin	A	B	Jumper pin
Jumper pin	C	D	Jumper pin
KEY (pin missing)	E	F	KEY (pin missing)
-RESET	1	2	GROUND
Data Bit 7	3	4	Data Bit 8
Data Bit 6	5	6	Data Bit 9
Data Bit 5	7	8	Data Bit 10
Data Bit 4	9	10	Data Bit 11
Data Bit 3	11	12	Data Bit 12
Data Bit 2	13	14	Data Bit 13
Data Bit 1	15	16	Data Bit 14
Data Bit 0	17	18	Data Bit 15
GROUND	19	20	KEY (pin missing)

Table 7.4 Continued

Signal Name	Pin	Pin	Signal Name
DRQ 3	21	22	GROUND
-IOW	23	24	GROUND
-IOR	25	26	GROUND
I/O CH RDY	27	28	CSEL
-DACK 3	29	30	GROUND
IRQ 14	31	32	Reserved
Address Bit 1	33	34	-PDIAG
Address Bit 0	35	36	Address Bit 2
-CS1FX	37	38	-CS3FX
-DA/SP	39	40	GROUND
+5V (Logic)	41	42	+5V (Motor)
GROUND	43	44	Reserved

Note

Many lower-cost board and cable manufacturers leave out the keying. Cheaper motherboards often don't have pin 20 removed on their ATA connectors; consequently, they don't supply a cable with pin 20 blocked. If they don't use a shrouded connector with a notch and a corresponding protrusion on the cable connector, no keying exists and the cables can be inserted backward. Fortunately, the only consequence of this in most cases is that the device won't work until the cable is attached with the correct orientation.

Note that some systems do not display video until the ATA drives respond to a spin-up command, which they can't receive if the cable is connected backward. So, if you connect an unkeyed ATA drive to your computer, turn on the computer, and it seems as if the system is locked up (you don't see anything on the screen), check the ATA cable. (See Figure 7.6 for examples of unkeyed and keyed ATA cables.)

In rare situations in which you are mixing and matching items, you might encounter a cable with pin 20 blocked (as it should be) and a board with pin 20 still present. In that case, you can break off pin 20 from the board—or for the more squeamish, remove the block from the cable or replace the cable with one without the blocked pin. Some cables have the block permanently installed as part of the connector housing, in which case you must break off pin 20 on the board or device end or use a different cable.

The simple rule of thumb is that pin 1 should be oriented toward the power connector on the device, which normally corresponds to the stripe on the cable.

PATA I/O Cable

A 40-conductor ribbon cable is specified to carry signals between the bus adapter circuits and the drive (controller). To maximize signal integrity and eliminate potential timing and noise problems, the cable should not be longer than 18 inches (0.46 meters), although testing shows that you can reliably use 80-conductor cables up to 27 inches (0.69 meters) in length.

Note that ATA drives supporting the higher-speed transfer modes, such as PIO Mode 4 or any of the Ultra-DMA (UDMA) modes, are especially susceptible to cable integrity problems. If the cable is too long, you can experience data corruption and other errors that can be maddening. This is manifested in problems reading from or writing to the drive. In addition, any drive using UDMA Mode 5 (66MBps transfer rate), Mode 6 (100MBps transfer rate), or Mode 7 (133MBps transfer rate) must use a special, higher-quality 80-conductor cable. I also recommend this type of cable if your drive is running at UDMA Mode 2 (33MBps) or slower because it can't hurt and can only help. I always keep a high-quality 80-conductor ATA cable in my toolbox for testing drives where I suspect cable integrity or cable length problems. Figure 7.5 shows the typical ATA cable layout and dimensions.

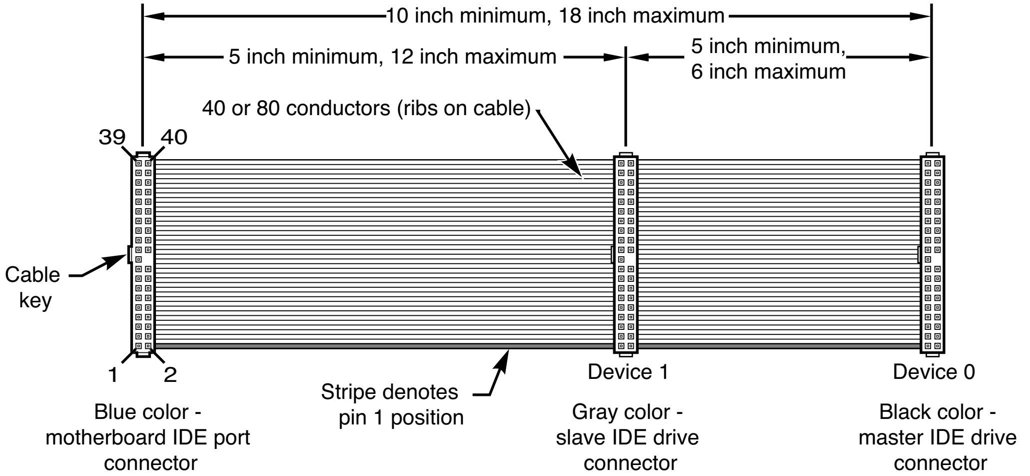


FIGURE 7.5 PATA (IDE) cable, with 40-pin connectors and either 40- or 80-conductor cables (additional wires are grounded in 80-conductor versions).

Note

Most 40-conductor cables do not have color-coded connectors, whereas all 80-conductor cables have color-coded connectors.

The two primary variations of PATA cables in use today—one with 40 conductors and the other with 80 conductors—are shown in Figure 7.6. As you can see, both use 40-pin connectors, and the additional wires in the 80-conductor version are simply wired to ground. The additional conductors are designed to reduce noise and interference and are required when setting the interface to run at 66MBps (ATA/66) or faster. The drive and host adapter are designed to disable the higher-speed ATA/66, ATA/100, and ATA/133 modes if an 80-conductor cable is not detected. In such cases, you might see a warning message when you start your computer if an ATA/66 or faster drive is connected to a 40-conductor cable. You can also use the 80-conductor cable at lower speeds to improve signal integrity. Therefore, it is the recommended version no matter which drive you use.

I once had a student ask me how to tell an 80-conductor cable from a 40-conductor cable. The simple answer is to count the ridges (conductors) in the cable. If you count only 40, it must be a 40-conductor cable, and if you count to 80…well, you get the idea! If you observe them side by side, the difference is clear: The 80-conductor cable has an obviously smoother, less ridged appearance than the 40-conductor cable.

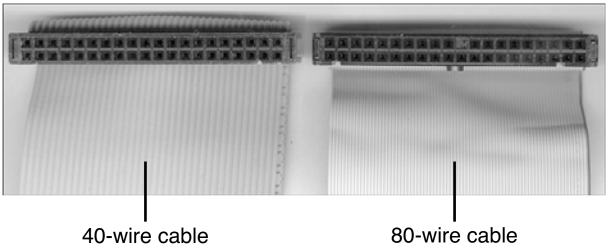


FIGURE 7.6 A 40-conductor PATA cable (left) and a 80-conductor PATA cable (right).

Note the keying on the 80-conductor cable that is designed to prevent backward installation. Note also that the poorly constructed 40-conductor cable shown in Figure 7.6 lacks keying. Most good 40-conductor cables include the keying; however, because it is optional, many cheaply constructed versions do not include it. Keying was made mandatory for all 80-conductor cables as part of the standard.

Longer or Rounded Cables

The official PATA standard limits cable length to 18 inches (0.46 meters); however, many of the cables sold are longer, up to 36 inches (0.91 meters) or more in length. I've had many readers write me questioning the length, asking, "Why would people sell cables longer than 18 inches if the standard doesn't allow it?" Well, just because something is for sale doesn't mean it conforms to the standards and will work properly! I see improperly designed, poorly manufactured, and nonconforming items for sale all the time. Many people have used the longer cables and their systems seem to work fine, but I've also documented numerous cases where using longer cables has caused problems, so I decided to investigate this issue more thoroughly.

What I discovered is that you can use longer 80-conductor cables reliably up to 27 inches (0.69 meters) in length, but 40-conductor cables should remain limited to 18 inches, just as the standard indicates.

In fact, an attempt was made to change the PATA standard to allow 27-inch cables. If you read www.t13.org/Documents/UploadedDocuments/technical/e00151r0.pdf, you'll see data from a proposal that shows "negligible differences in Ultra DMA Mode 5 signal integrity between a 27-inch, 80-conductor cable and an 18-inch, 80-conductor cable." This extended cable design was actually proposed back in October 2000, but it was never incorporated into the standard. Even though it was never officially approved, I take the information presented in this proposal as empirical evidence for allowing the use of 80-conductor cables up to 27 inches in length without problems.

To that, I would add another recommendation, which is that in general I do not recommend "rounded" ATA cables. A rounded design has not been approved in the ATA standard, and there is some evidence that it can cause problems with crosstalk and noise. The design of 80-conductor cables is such that a ground wire is interspersed between each data wire in the ribbon, and rounding the cable causes some of the data lines to run parallel or adjacent to each other at random, thereby causing crosstalk and noise and resulting in signal errors.

Of course, many people use rounded cables with success, but my knowledge of electrical engineering as well as the ATA standard has always made me somewhat uncomfortable with their use.

PATA Signals

This section describes in more detail some of the most important PATA signals having to do with drive configuration and installation. This information can help you understand how the cable select feature works, for example.

Pin 20 is used as a key pin for cable orientation and is not connected to the interface. This pin should be missing from any ATA connectors, and the cable should have the pin-20 hole in the connector plugged off to prevent the cable from being plugged in backward.

Pin 39 carries the drive active/slave present (DASP) signal, which is a dual-purpose, time-multiplexed signal. During power-on initialization, this signal indicates whether a slave drive is present on the interface. After that, each drive asserts the signal to indicate that it is active. Early drives could not multiplex these functions and required special jumper settings to work with other drives. Standardizing this function to allow for compatible dual-drive installations is one of the features of the ATA standard. This is why some drives require a slave present (SP) jumper, whereas others do not.

Pin 28 carries the cable select signal (CSEL). In some older drives, it could also carry a spindle synchronization signal (SPSYNC), but that is not commonly found on newer drives. The CSEL function is the most widely used and is designed to control the designation of a drive as master (drive 0) or slave (drive 1) without requiring jumper settings on the drives. If a drive sees the CSEL as being grounded, the drive is a master; if CSEL is open, the drive is a slave.

You can install special cabling to ground CSEL selectively. This installation usually is accomplished through a cable that has pin 28 missing from the middle connector but present in the connectors on each end. In that arrangement, with one end plugged into the motherboard and two drives set to cable select, the drive plugged into the end connector is automatically configured as master, whereas the drive attached to the middle connector is configured as slave. Note that although this is the most common arrangement, it is also possible to make cables where the middle connector is master (and the end is slave), or even to use a Y-cable arrangement, with the motherboard ATA bus connector in the middle, and each drive at opposite ends of the cable. In this arrangement, one leg of the Y would have the CSEL line connected through (master), and the other leg would have the CSEL line open (conductor interrupted or removed), making the drive at that end the slave.

PATA Dual-Drive Configurations

Dual-drive PATA installations can be problematic because each drive has its own controller, and both controllers must function while being connected to the same bus. There has to be a way to ensure that only one of the two controllers responds to a command at a time.

The ATA standard provides the option of operating on the AT bus with two drives in a daisy-chained configuration. The primary drive (drive 0) is called the *master*, and the secondary drive (drive 1) is called the *slave*. You designate a drive as being master or slave by setting a jumper or switch on the drive or by using a special line in the interface called the *cable select (CS) pin* and setting the CS jumper on the drive.

When only one drive is installed, the controller responds to all commands from the system. When two drives (and, therefore, two controllers) are installed, both controllers receive all commands from the system. Each controller then must be set up to respond only to commands for itself. In this situation, one controller must be designated as the master and the other as the slave. When the system sends a command for a specific drive, the controller on the other drive must remain silent while the selected controller and drive are functioning. Setting the jumper to master or slave enables discrimination between the two controllers by setting a special bit (the DRV bit) in the drive/head register of a command block.

Configuring ATA drives can be simple, as is the case with most single-drive installations. Or it can be troublesome, especially when it comes to mixing two older drives from different manufacturers on a single cable.

You can configure most ATA drives with four possible settings:

- Master (single drive)
- Master (dual drive)
- Slave (dual drive)
- Cable select

Most drives simplify this to three settings: master, slave, and cable select. Because each ATA drive has its own controller, you must specifically tell one drive to be the master and the other to be the slave. No functional difference exists between the two, except that the drive that's specified as the slave asserts a signal called DASP after a system reset informs the master that a slave drive is present in the system. The master drive then pays attention to the drive select line, which it otherwise ignores. Telling a drive that it's the slave also usually causes it to delay its spin-up for several seconds to allow the master to get going and thus to lessen the load on the system's power supply.

Until the ATA specification, no common implementation for drive configuration was in use. Some drive companies even used different master/slave methods for different models of drives. Because of these incompatibilities, some drives work together only in a specific master/slave or slave/master order. This situation mostly affects older IDE drives introduced before the ATA specification.

Most drives that fully follow the ATA specification now need only one jumper (master/slave) for configuration. A few also need a slave present jumper. Table 7.5 shows the jumper settings that most ATA drives require.

Table 7.5 Jumper Settings for Most ATA-Compatible Drives on Standard (Non–Cable Select) Cables

Jumper Name	Single-Drive	Dual-Drive Master	Dual-Drive Slave
Master (M/S)	On	On	Off
Slave Present (SP)	Off	On	Off
Cable Select (CS)	Off	Off	Off

Note

If a cable select cable is used, the CS jumper should be set to On and all others should be set to Off. The cable connector then determines which drive will be master or slave.

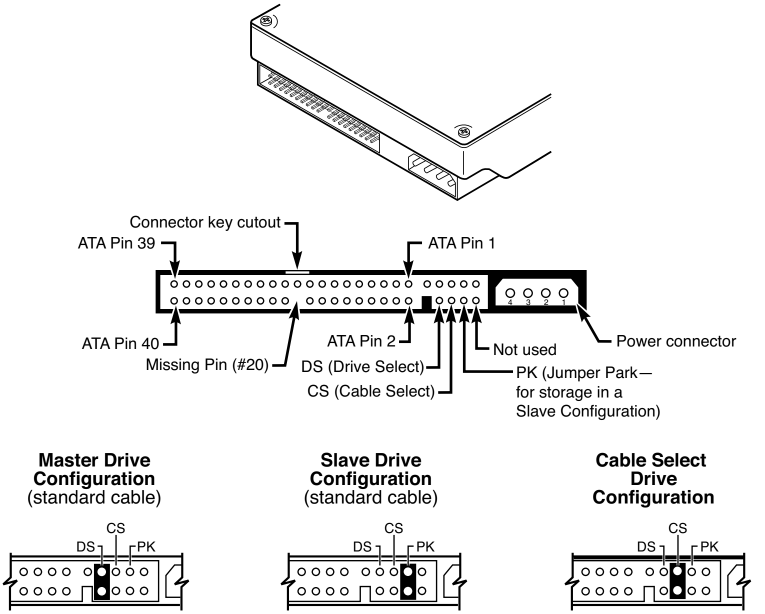
Figure 7.7 shows the jumpers on a typical ATA drive.

The master jumper indicates that the drive is a master or a slave. Some drives also require a slave present jumper, which is used only in a dual-drive setup and then installed only on the master drive, which is somewhat confusing. This jumper tells the master that a slave drive is attached. With many PATA drives, the master jumper is optional and can be left off. Installing this jumper doesn't hurt in these cases and can eliminate confusion; I recommend that you install the jumpers listed here.

Note

Some drives have these jumpers on the drive circuit board on the bottom of the drive, and as such they might not be visible on the rear.

To eliminate confusion over master/slave settings, most newer systems now use the cable select option. This involves two things. The first is having a special PATA cable that has all the wires except pin 28 running from the motherboard connector to both drive connectors. Pin 28 is used for cable select and is connected to one of the drive connectors (labeled master) and not to the other (labeled slave). Both drives are then configured in cable select mode via the CS jumper on each drive.



Master Drive Configuration (standard cable)

Slave Drive Configuration (standard cable)

Cable Select Drive Configuration

Use the Master Drive Configuration for the first (or only) drive on a standard (non-cable select) cable.

Use the Slave Drive Configuration for the second drive on a standard (non-cable select) cable; note that for a Slave Configuration, the jumper can be stored in the PK (Jumper Park) position, removed entirely, or stored on one of the DS Pins in a flag arrangement.

For Cable Select Drive Configurations, one or both drives are configured the same; the cable automatically determines which is Master or Slave by which connector the drive is plugged into.

FIGURE 7.7 PATA (IDE) drive jumpers for most drives.

With cable select, the drive that receives signals on pin 28 automatically becomes the master, and the other becomes the slave. Most cables implement this by removing the metal insulation displacement bit from the pin-28 hole, which can be difficult to see at a glance. Other cables have a section of pin 28 visibly cut from the cable somewhere along the ribbon. Because this is such a minor modification to the cable and can be difficult to see, cable select cables typically have the connectors labeled master, slave, and system, indicating that the cable controls these options rather than the drive. All 80-conductor Ultra-ATA cables are designed to use cable select.

With cable select, you simply set the CS jumper on all drives and then plug the drive you want to be the master into the connector labeled master on the cable and the drive you want to be the slave into the connector labeled slave.

The only downside I see to using cable select is that it can restrict how the cable is routed or where you mount the drive that is to be master versus slave because they must be plugged into specific cable connector positions.

PATA PIO Transfer Modes

ATA-2 and ATA-3 defined the first of several higher-performance modes for transferring data over the PATA interface, to and from the drive. These faster modes were the main part of the newer specifications and were the main reason they were initially developed. The following section discusses these modes.

The PIO (programmed I/O) mode determines how fast data is transferred to and from the drive using PIO transfers. In the slowest possible mode—PIO Mode 0—the data cycle time can't exceed 600 nanoseconds (ns). In a single cycle, 16 bits are transferred into or out of the drive, making the theoretical transfer rate of PIO Mode 0 (600ns cycle time) 3.3MBps, whereas PIO Mode 4 (120ns cycle time) achieves a 16.6MBps transfer rate.

Most motherboards with ATA-2 or greater support have dual ATA connectors on the motherboard. Most of the motherboard chipsets include the ATA interface in their South Bridge components, which in most systems is tied into the PCI bus.

Older 486 and some early Pentium boards have only the primary connector running through the system's PCI local bus. The secondary connector on those boards usually runs through the ISA bus and therefore supports up to Mode 2 operation only.

When interrogated with an `Identify Drive` command, a hard disk returns, among other things, information about the PIO and DMA modes it is capable of using. Most BIOSs automatically set the correct mode to match the capabilities of the drive. If you set a mode faster than the drive can handle, data corruption results.

ATA-2 and newer drives also perform Block Mode PIO, which means they use the Read/Write Multiple commands that greatly reduce the number of interrupts sent to the host processor. This lowers the overhead, and the resulting transfers are even faster.

PATA DMA Transfer Modes

ATA drives support two types of transfers: programmed input/output (PIO), and direct memory access (DMA) transfers. DMA means that the data is transferred directly between drive and memory without using the CPU as an intermediary, as opposed to PIO. This offloads much of the work of transferring data from the processor, in effect allowing the processor to do other things while the transfer is taking place. DMA transfers are much faster than PIO transfers and are supported by all modern ATA devices.

There are two distinct types of direct memory access: singleword (8-bit) and multiword (16-bit). Singleword DMA modes were removed from the ATA-3 and later specifications and are obsolete. DMA modes are also sometimes called *busmaster* ATA modes because they use a host adapter that supports busmastering. Ordinary DMA relies on the legacy DMA controller on the motherboard to perform the complex task of arbitration, grabbing the system bus and transferring the data. In the case of busmastering DMA, all this is done by a higher-speed logic chip in the host adapter interface (which is also on the motherboard).

Systems using the Intel PIIX (PCI IDE ISA eXcelerator) and later South Bridge chips (or equivalent) can support busmaster ATA. The singleword and multiword busmaster ATA modes and transfer rates are shown in Tables 7.6 and 7.7, respectively.

Table 7.6 Singleword (8-Bit) DMA Modes and Transfer Rates

8-Bit DMA Mode	Bus Width (Bits)	Cycle Speed (ns)	Bus Speed (MHz)	Cycles per Clock	Transfer Rate (MBps)	ATA Specification
0	16	960	1.04	1	2.08	ATA-1*
1	16	480	2.08	1	4.17	ATA-1*
2	16	240	4.17	1	8.33	ATA-1*

**Singleword (8-bit) DMA modes were removed from the ATA-3 and later specifications.*

Table 7.7 Multiword (16-Bit) DMA Modes and Transfer Rates

16-Bit DMA Mode	Bus Width (Bits)	Cycle Speed (ns)	Bus Speed (MHz)	Cycles per Clock	Transfer Rate (MBps)	ATA Specification
0	16	480	2.08	1	4.17	ATA-1
1	16	150	6.67	1	13.33	ATA-2*
2	16	120	8.33	1	16.67	ATA-2*

**ATA-2 was also referred to as EIDE (Enhanced IDE) or Fast-ATA.*

Note that multiword DMA modes are also called *busmaster DMA modes* by some manufacturers. Unfortunately, even the fastest multiword DMA Mode 2 results in the same 16.67MBps transfer speed as PIO Mode 4. However, even though the transfer speed is the same as PIO, because DMA offloads much of the work from the processor, overall system performance is higher. Even so, multiword DMA modes were never very popular and have been superseded by the newer Ultra-DMA modes supported in devices that are compatible with ATA-4 through ATA-7.

Table 7.8 shows the Ultra-DMA modes now supported in the ATA-4 through ATA-7 specifications. Note that you need to install the correct drivers for your host adapter and version of Windows to use this feature.

Table 7.8 Ultra-DMA Support in ATA-4 Through ATA-7

Ultra DMA Mode	Bus Width (Bits)	Cycle Speed (ns)	Bus Speed (MHz)	Cycles per Clock	Transfer Rate (MBps)	ATA Specification
0	16	240	4.17	2	16.67	ATA-4
1	16	160	6.25	2	25.00	ATA-4
2	16	120	8.33	2	33.33	ATA-4
3	16	90	11.11	2	44.44	ATA-5
4	16	60	16.67	2	66.67	ATA-5
5	16	40	25.00	2	100.00	ATA-6
6	16	30	33.00	2	133.00	ATA-7

ATA-4 UDMA Mode 2 is sometimes called Ultra-ATA/33 or ATA-33.

ATA-5 UDMA Mode 4 is sometimes called Ultra-ATA/66 or ATA-66.

ATA-6 UDMA Mode 5 is sometimes called Ultra-ATA/100 or ATA-100.

ATA-7 UDMA Mode 6 is sometimes called Ultra-ATA/133 or ATA-133.

SATA

The development of ATA-8 marked the beginning of the end for the PATA standard that has been in use since 1986. Sending data at rates faster than 133MBps down a parallel ribbon cable originally designed for only 8.3Mbps is fraught with all kinds of problems because of signal timing, electromagnetic interference (EMI), and other integrity problems. The solution, Serial ATA, is an evolutionary replacement for the venerable PATA physical storage interface. When set in non-AHCI/RAID modes (in other words, IDE or legacy mode), SATA is software-compatible with PATA, which means it emulates all the commands, registers, and controls so existing software can run without changes. In other words, the existing BIOSs, operating systems, and utilities that work on PATA also work with SATA.

Of course, they do differ physically—that is, you can't plug PATA drives into SATA host adapters, and vice versa, although signal converters do make that possible. The physical changes are all for the better because SATA uses much smaller and thinner cables with only seven conductors that are easier to route inside the PC and easier to plug in with smaller, redesigned cable connectors. The interface chip designs also are improved, with far fewer pins and lower voltages. All these improvements are designed to eliminate the design problems inherent in PATA.

Figure 7.8 shows the official Serial ATA International Organization working group logo that identifies most SATA devices.

FIGURE 7.8 Serial ATA official logo, which identifies SATA devices.

Although SATA didn't immediately replace PATA, most systems sold following SATA's standardization included SATA interfaces alongside PATA interfaces. Over time, SATA has predominantly replaced PATA as the de facto standard internal storage device interface found in PCs, and most current systems lack PATA support. However, some motherboards and devices with PATA support are still available, and where repairs are considered they will likely remain available at a minimum level for some time.

SATA Standards and Performance

Development for SATA started when the Serial ATA Working Group effort was announced at the Intel Developer Forum in February 2000. The initial members of the Serial ATA Working Group included APT Technologies, Dell, IBM, Intel, Maxtor, Quantum, and Seagate. The original group later became known as the Serial ATA II Working Group, and finally in July 2004, it became the Serial ATA International Organization. These groups have released the following SATA specifications:

- The first SATA 1.0 draft specification was released in November 2000 and was officially published as a final specification in August 2001.
- The first SATA II Working Group extensions to this specification, which made SATA suitable for network storage, were released in October 2002.
- SATA Revision 2 was released in April 2004. It added the 3Gbps (300MBps) signaling speed.

- SATA Revision 2.5 was released in August 2005. It added Native Command Queuing (NCQ), staggered spin-up, hot plug, port multiplier, and eSATA support.
- SATA Revision 2.6 was released in March 2007. It added new internal Slimline and Micro cables and connectors as well as modifications to NCQ.
- SATA Revision 3.0 was released in 2009. It added the 6Gbps (600MBps) signaling speed.
- SATA Revision 3.1 was released in 2011. It added improvements in power management, hardware control, and a Queued Trim Command for improving SSD performance.
- SATA Revision 3.2 was released in 2013. It adds a new interface called SATA Express, which uses SATA commands over a PCIe hardware interface for transfer speeds up to 16Gbps.

You can download the specifications from the Serial ATA International Organization website at www.serialata.org. Since forming, the group has grown to include more than 200 contributor and adopter companies from all areas of industry.

Systems using SATA were released in late 2002 using discrete PCI interface boards and chips. SATA was integrated directly into motherboard chipsets in April 2003 with the introduction of the Intel ICH5 chipset component. Since then, virtually all new motherboard chipsets have included SATA.

The performance of SATA is impressive, although current hard drive designs can’t fully take advantage of its bandwidth. Solid State Drives (SSDs), on the other hand, can and do take advantage of all of the bandwidth that SATA has to offer and are the driving force for the introduction of even higher bandwidth standards. Three main variations of the original standard use the same cables and connectors; they differ only in transfer rate performance. SATA Express, in contrast, uses new cables and connectors for dramatically increased throughput. Table 7.9 shows the bandwidth specifications; devices supporting the second-generation 300MBps (3Gbps) version became available in 2005, and devices supporting the third-generation 600MBps (6Gbps) versions became available in 2011. SATA Express devices are expected to be available in 2014.

Table 7.9 SATA Transfer Modes

SATA Type	Signal Rate (Gbps)	Bus Width (Bits)	Bus Speed (MHz)	Data Cycles per Clock	Throughput
SATA-150	1.5	1	1,500	1	150
SATA-300	3.0	1	3,000	1	300
SATA-600	6.0	1	6,000	1	600
SATA Express	8.0	2	16,000	1	1,969*

**Note SATA Express uses 128b/130b encoding, which is 98.5% efficient vs. the 80% efficient 8b/10b encoding used by SATA.*

SATA Express

The advent of high-performance SSD (solid-state drive) storage has pushed the need for greater and greater interface bandwidth. SATA 3.0 offers up to 600MBps throughput, which by 2011 many SSDs could deliver. Since then the development of faster and faster drives has been mostly limited by the interface bandwith, and that SATA had become the bottleneck. To eliminate this bottleneck, the Serial ATA International Organization (SATA-IO) first studied doubling the SATA 6Gbps rate to 12Gbps;

however, they found that doing so required extensive (and expensive) changes in cabling and signaling, not to mention that development would take some time. Instead, they decided to take a much easier way out by using the existing PCI Express interface. SATA-IO first announced in 2011 that it was developing a faster version of SATA called SATA Express, which was finally completed and published in 2013 as part of the SATA 3.2 specification.

SATA Express combines PCI Express signaling with the SATA software protocol (command set), plus a new set of cables and connectors that are backward compatible with SATA. When using PCIe 3.0 signaling, SATA Express offers up to 16Gbps in raw data throughput, which translates to nearly 2 gigabytes per second of actual data bandwidth. That is nearly 3.3 times faster than conventional SATA at 600MBps.

Not only is the SATA Express signaling speed much faster, but it is also more efficient, resulting in even higher bandwiths than the raw signaling rate would imply. Conventional SATA uses 8b/10b encoding, which is 80% efficient. That means that 8 out of every 10 bits (or 80%) in the raw data stream are actual data; the other 2 bits (or 20%) are overhead. SATA Express uses the more advanced 128b/130b encoding scheme found in PCI Express 3.0, which is an incredible 98.5% efficient, with only 1.5% overhead. This is achieved by scrambling the raw data to be sent using a known binary polynomial and then unscrambling it at the other end using the inverse polynomial. Because SATA Express uses two PCIe lanes with up to 8Gbps per lane, combined with the more efficient encoding, the end result is a whopping 1,969MBps maximum throughput as compared to 600MBps for conventional SATA.

SATA Express uses a wider cable with 18 conductors vs. the 7 conductors in a standard SATA cable. SATA Express motherboard connectors are backward compatible with SATA, meaning you can plug one or two standard SATA cables into a single SATA Express connector (see Figure 7.9). Connecting conventional SATA drives to a SATA Express port causes the port to shift down to conventional SATA mode.

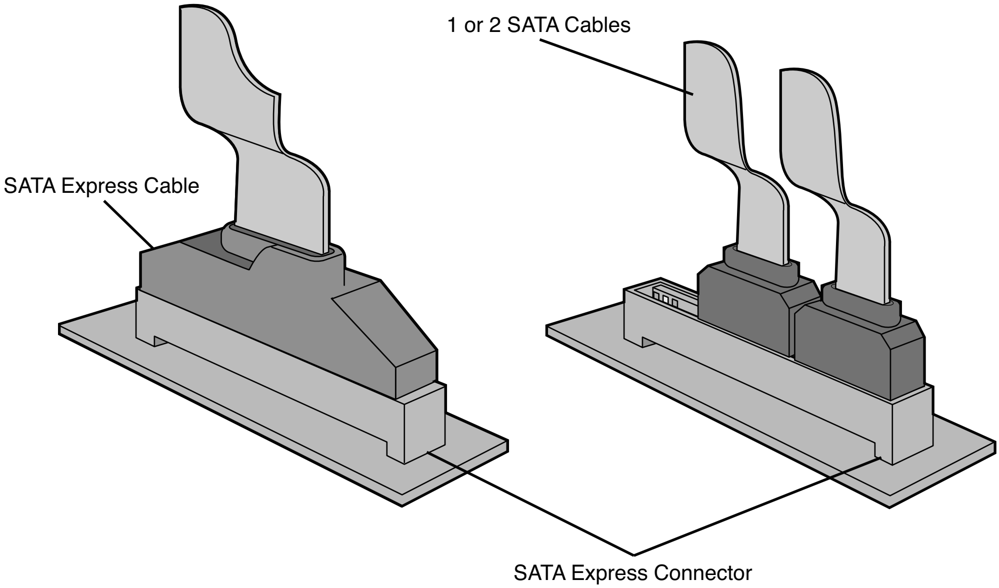


FIGURE 7.9 SATA Express motherboard and cable connectors, showing backward compatibility with conventional SATA.

With SATA Express offering more than three times the throughput of conventional SATA, high-performance storage devices like SSDs will become even faster in the future.

SATA Cables and Connectors

From Table 7.9, you can see that conventional SATA sends data only a single bit at a time, while SATA Express sends 2 bits. The cable used for SATA has only seven wires (four signal and three ground) and is a thin design, with keyed connectors only 14mm (0.55 inches) wide on each end. This eliminates problems with airflow compared to the wider PATA ribbon cables. Each cable has connectors only at each end, and each cable connects the device directly to the host adapter (typically on the motherboard). There are no master/slave settings because each cable supports only a single device. The cable ends are interchangeable; the connector on the motherboard is the same as on the device, and both cable ends are identical. Maximum SATA cable length is 1 meter (39.37 inches), which is considerably longer than the 18-inch maximum for PATA.

Although SATA-600 uses the same cables and connectors as the previous (slower) versions, it does place higher demands for quality, so some manufacturers will mark higher quality cables with a rating like “SATA 6Gbps.” One issue that becomes more of a problem is bending cables. Data moving at the higher 3Gbps and 6Gbps rates can be corrupted when encountering a severe right-angle bend, so it is recommended that when routing SATA cables you do not crimp or bend them sharply with a pliers; use more gradual curves or bends instead. Note that this does not apply to cables with right-angle connectors; the wires in the connectors have multiple bends or curve instead.

SATA uses a special encoding scheme called 8b/10b to encode and decode data sent along the cable. IBM initially developed (and patented) the 8b/10b transmission code in the early 1980s for use in high-speed data communications. Many high-speed data transmission standards, including Gigabit Ethernet, Fibre Channel, FireWire, and others, use this encoding scheme. The main purpose of the 8b/10b encoding scheme is to guarantee that never more than four 0s (or 1s) are transmitted consecutively. This is a form of Run Length Limited (RLL) encoding called RLL 0,4, in which the 0 represents the minimum and the 4 represents the maximum number of consecutive 0s or 1s in each encoded character.

The 8b/10b encoding also ensures that there are never more than six or fewer than four 0s (or 1s) in a single encoded 10-bit character. Because 1s and 0s are sent as voltage changes on a wire, this ensures that the spacing between the voltage transitions sent by the transmitter is fairly balanced, with a more regular and steady stream of pulses. This presents a steadier load on the circuits, increasing reliability. The conversion from 8-bit data to 10-bit encoded characters for transmission leaves several 10-bit patterns unused. Many of these additional patterns provide flow control, delimit packets of data, perform error checking, or perform other special functions.

The physical transmission scheme for SATA uses *differential NRZ* (Non Return to Zero). This uses a balanced pair of wires, each carrying +0.25V (one-quarter volt). The signals are sent differentially: If one wire in the pair carries +0.25V, the other wire carries –0.25V, where the differential voltage between the two wires is always 0.5V (one-half volt). So, for a given voltage waveform, the opposite voltage waveform is sent along the adjacent wire. Differential transmission minimizes electromagnetic radiation and makes the signals easier to read on the receiving end.

A 15-pin power cable and power connector is optional with SATA, providing 3.3V power in addition to the 5V and 12V provided via the industry-standard 4-pin device power connectors. Although it has 15 pins, this new power connector design is only 24mm (0.945 inches). With 3 pins designated for each of the 3.3V, 5V, and 12V power levels, enough capacity exists for up to 4.5 amps of current at each voltage, which is plenty for even the most power-hungry drives. For compatibility with existing power supplies, SATA drives can be made with the original, standard 4-pin device power connector or the new 15-pin SATA power connector (or both). If the drive doesn't have the type of connector you need, adapters are available to convert from one type to the other.

Figure 7.10 shows what the SATA signal and power connectors look like, and Figure 7.11 shows SATA and PATA host adapters on a typical motherboard.

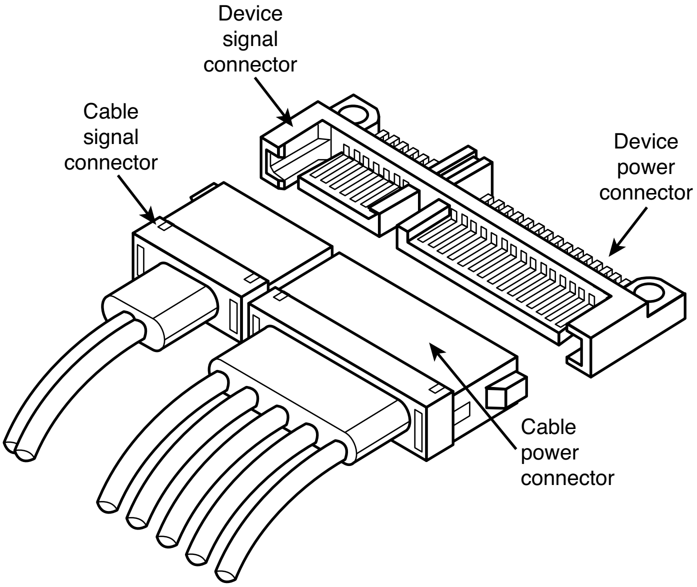


FIGURE 7.10 SATA signal and power connectors on a typical SATA hard drive.

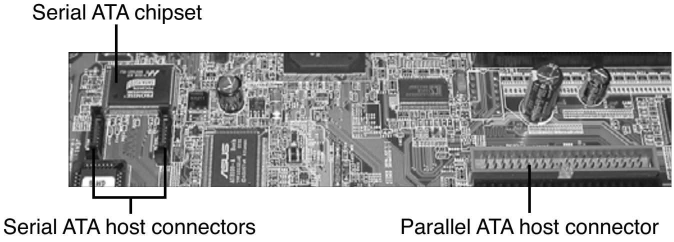


FIGURE 7.11 A motherboard with SATA and PATA host adapters.

The pinouts for the SATA data and optional power connectors are shown in Tables 7.10 and 7.11, respectively.

Table 7.10 SATA Data Connector Pinout

Signal Pin	Signal	Description
S1	Gnd	First mate
S2	A+	Host Transmit +
S3	A-	Host Transmit –

Signal Pin	Signal	Description
S4	Gnd	First mate
S5	B–	Host Receive –
S6	B+	Host Receive +
S7	Gnd	First mate

All pins are in a single row spaced 1.27mm (.050 inches) apart.
All ground pins are longer so they will make contact before the signal/power pins to allow hot-plugging.

Table 7.11 SATA Optional Power Connector Pinout

Signal Pin	Signal	Description
P1	+3.3V	3.3V power
P2	+3.3V	3.3V power
P3	+3.3V	3.3V power
P4	Gnd	First mate
P5	Gnd	First mate
P6	Gnd	First mate
P7	+5V	5V power
P8	+5V	5V power
P9	+5V	5V power
P10	Gnd	First mate
P11	Gnd	First mate
P12	Gnd	First mate
P13	+12V	12V power
P14	+12V	12V power
P15	+12V	12V power

All pins are in a single row spaced 1.27mm (.050 inches) apart.
All ground pins are longer, so they make contact before the signal/power pins to allow hot-plugging.
Three power pins carry 4.5 amps, a maximum current for each voltage.

Mini-SATA (mSATA)

Mini-SATA (mSATA) is a form factor specification developed by Intel for very small solid-state drives (SSDs), primarily in laptop or tablet systems. The mSATA form factor is virtually identical to Mini-PCI Express, which is the form factor used for mobile WLAN (wireless local area network or WiFi) and WWAN (wireless wide-area network) adapters. By using the same card size and shape but with a slightly modified connector design, a Mini-PCIe socket can function in both Mini-PCIe and mSATA modes.

mSATA drives are significantly smaller than the standard 2.5-inch drives used in most laptops (see Figure 7.12).

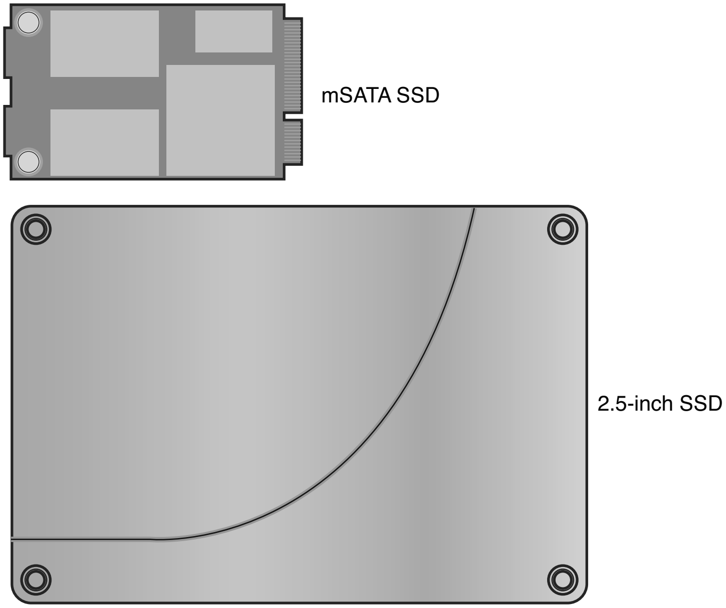


FIGURE 7.12 An mSATA drive compared to a standard 2.5-inch drive.

Tablet devices typically have a dedicated mSATA connector internally, which is designed solely for mSATA SSDs. Many laptops, however, have an internal combination mSATA/WWAN connector, which can accept either an mSATA SSD or a WWAN interface card. Depending on which type of device is installed, the port will automatically switch to the proper mode.

mSATA SSDs are not available in nearly as high capacities as 2.5-inch SSDs, but they are also physically smaller and less expensive. Laptops with mSATA/WWAN ports can have a high-performance mSATA SSD installed as the boot drive, and then use a much cheaper and higher capacity conventional HDD as a data storage drive.

eSATA

When SATA was first released, the ability to run longer cables of up to 1 meter (3.3 ft.) made people think about running cables out of the system to external drives. Some companies jumped on this demand, creating a market for proprietary cable and connector designs allowing SATA drives to be run in external enclosures. Unfortunately, the designs were proprietary, and since SATA cables lacked the shielding and other design criteria to allow external operation, some of the designs were unreliable. Realizing that there was a market for external SATA, the Serial ATA International Organization (SATA-IO) released the official standard for external SATA called eSATA in 2004.

eSATA is a variation on SATA specifically designed for external connections. The main differences between SATA and eSATA are in the cables. eSATA allows for longer cables of up to 2 meters (6.6 ft.), and the cables have extra shielding. The connectors are different both electrically and mechanically as well. They have deeper contacts, metal springs for shielding and mechanical retention, and are designed for up to 5,000 mating cycles vs. only 50 for internal cables. The eSATA cable and port connectors are shown in Figure 7.13.

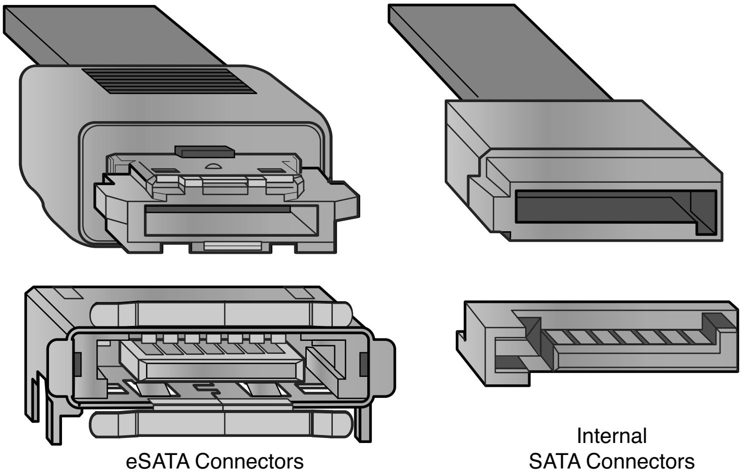


FIGURE 7.13 eSATA (left) and standard internal SATA (right) cable and port connectors compared.

eSATA supports all SATA transfer speeds up to 6Gbps rate (600MBps); however, some are limited to 3Gbps (300MBps) or less. Even at 300MBps, eSATA is significantly faster than other popular external interfaces such as 1394a/FireWire 400 (50MBps) and USB 2.0 (60MBps). In fact, with 300MBps or 600MBps of bandwidth, eSATA is three to six times faster than 1394b/FireWire 800 (100MBps), and even the 3Gbps (300MBps) mode of eSATA is faster than USB 3.0 (5Gbps or 500MBps). How can 300MBps eSATA be faster than 500GBps USB 3.0? One reason is that there is a large amount of overhead in the USB specification to allow for even longer cable lengths (5 meters or 16 ft.), which drops the actual data throughput to well under 400MBps, but the other reality is that any external drive connected via USB 3.0 consists of a SATA drive plus circuitry converting the data from SATA to USB 3.0 inside the enclosure, thereby reducing efficiency even more. When using eSATA, there is no signal conversion inside the external enclosure (eSATA is SATA, after all) making the interface much more efficient. In short, eSATA is just about the ideal connection for external drives, allowing them to work just as if they were internal to the system.

If your system doesn't have an eSATA port built in, you can easily add one using a very inexpensive cable and bracket assembly. The cable will plug into one of your motherboard-based SATA ports, and the other end of the cable will be an eSATA connector mounted in an expansion card bracket (see Figure 7.14). Brackets are available with one or two ports as necessary.

Power Over eSATA (eSATAp)

One drawback to eSATA over USB is that eSATA does not provide power. To rectify this, several manufacturers got together and informally created the eSATA USB Hybrid Port (EUHP) that combines USB and eSATA ports into a single physical connector. The SATA International Organization (SATA-IO) is working to make this an official standard called the Power Over eSATA (eSATAp) specification.

An eSATAp port is basically both a USB port and an eSATA port combined in one single connector (see Figure 7.15). These ports will normally be identified with an "eSATA + USB" notation. They accept standard USB or eSATA cables, and when attached, the proper connections will be made for the desired interface to function. A third option is to plug in an eSATAp cable, which will combine the eSATA and USB signals with +5V or +12V power, allowing the connection of USB, SATA, or eSATAp devices with no separate power adapter necessary. eSATAp ports have become very popular in laptops for connecting high-speed external drives, and you can get bracket adapters to add them to desktop systems (see Figure 7.16).

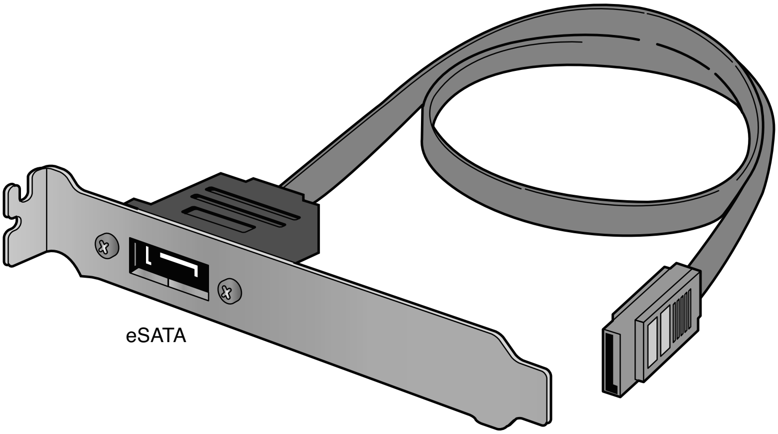


FIGURE 7.14 SATA to eSATA bracket assembly for adding eSATA ports to a system.

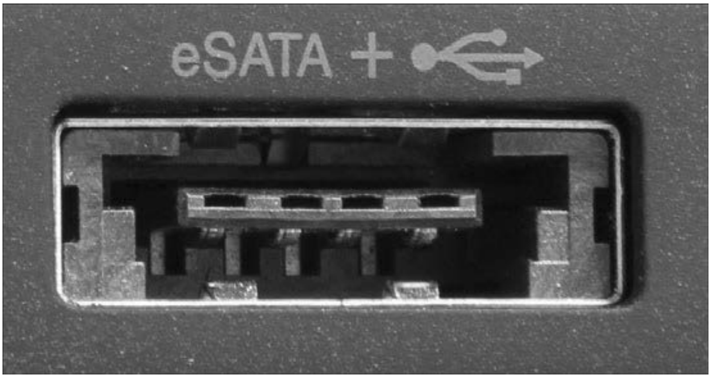


FIGURE 7.15 An eSATAP (Power Over eSATA) combination eSATA and USB connector.

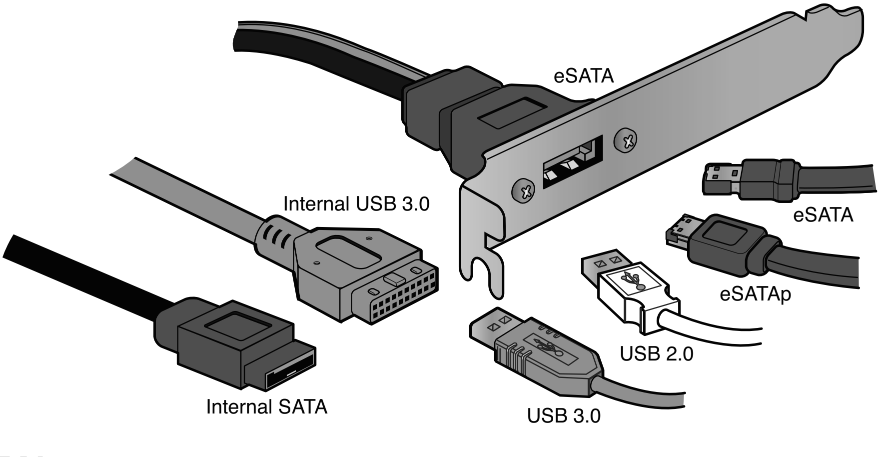


FIGURE 7.16 An eSATAp (Power Over eSATA) bracket showing optional USB 3.0/2.0, eSATAp, and eSATA connections.

There are several variations on eSATAp ports. The USB part of eSATAp can be either USB 2.0 or 3.0, depending on the specific implementation. Just as with standard USB only ports, if the eSATAp port is blue in color, that indicates USB 3.0 capability. Another variation is the eSATA speed. Some supply the full 6Gbps (600MBps) rate of SATA 3.0, while others allow only 3Gbps (300MBps) mode. Finally, another variation is in the power. In most laptop systems, an eSATAp port will only supply +5V power, which is fine for powering external 2.5-inch drives. Desktop versions of eSATAp can supply both +5V and +12V power, allowing external 3.5-inch drives to be powered as well.

Besides allowing faster data transfer than even USB 3.0, connecting external drives using eSATA or eSATAp has another major advantage over USB, and that is bootability. Windows does not allow booting from USB drives; however, drives connected via eSATA or eSATAp do not have that restriction. Windows will treat them the same as if they were internally connected. Using eSATA or eSATAp, one can use and easily swap external bootable drives, a feature especially useful for diagnostics and testing purposes.

SATA Configuration

Configuration of SATA devices is also much simpler because the master/slave or cable select jumper settings used with PATA are no longer necessary.

BIOS setup for SATA drives is also quite simple. Because SATA is based on ATA, autodetection of drive settings on systems with SATA connectors is performed in the same way as on PATA systems. Depending on the system, SATA interfaces will support legacy (usually called "IDE"), AHCI (Advanced Host Controller Interface) or RAID (redundant array of independent disks) modes. In most cases you will want to set AHCI mode for the SATA host adapter to run in its native, most fully featured mode. RAID mode is a superset of AHCI and allows multiple drives to be configured in an array to act as a single drive. (See Chapter 5, "BIOS," for details.)

If you want to use SATA drives but don't want to install a new motherboard with SATA host adapters already included, you can install a separate SATA host adapter into a PCI or PCIe expansion slot (see Figure 7.17). Many of these adapters include RAID capability as well.

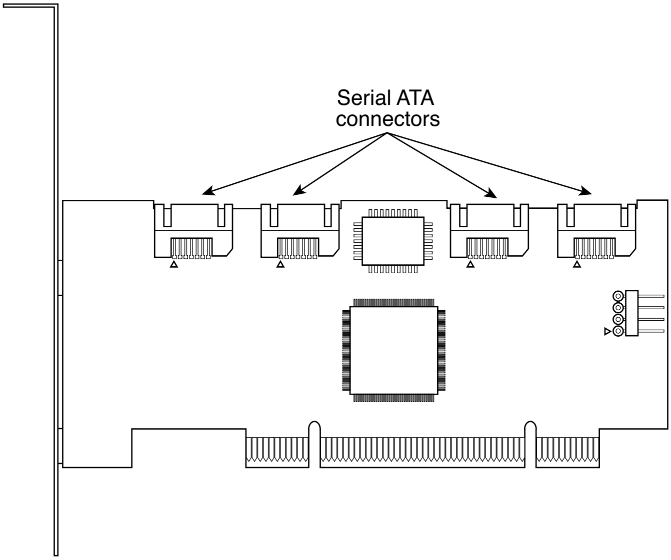


FIGURE 7.17 Typical 4-port SATA RAID host adapter.

Advanced Host Controller Interface (AHCI)

SATA was designed not only as a replacement for PATA, but as an interface that would evolve into something with many more capabilities and features than its predecessor. Initially, compatibility with PATA was one of the most important features of SATA because it enabled a smooth and easy transition from one to the other. This compatibility extends to the driver level, allowing SATA devices to use the same BIOS-level drivers and software as legacy PATA devices.

Although the intent of SATA was to allow an easy transition from PATA, it was also designed to allow future growth and expansion of capabilities. To accomplish this, an enhanced software interface called the *Advanced Host Controller Interface* (AHCI) was initially developed by the AHCI Contributor Group, a group chaired by Intel and originally consisting of AMD, Dell, Marvell, Maxtor, Microsoft, Red Hat, Seagate, and StorageGear. The AHCI Contributor Group released a preliminary version of AHCI v0.95 in May 2003 and released the 1.0 version of the specification in April 2004. You can download the latest version (1.3, released in 2008) from Intel at www.intel.com/technology/serialata/ahci.htm.

AHCI provides an industry-standard, high-performance interface to system driver/OS software for discovering and implementing such advanced SATA features as command queuing, hot-plugging, and power management. AHCI was integrated into SATA-supporting chipsets in 2004 and is supported by AHCI drivers for Windows. The main idea behind AHCI is to have a single driver-level interface supported by all advanced SATA host adapters. This greatly simplifies the installation of operating systems, eliminating the need for custom SATA drivers for each manufacturer's SATA host adapter. For example, Windows Vista and later include AHCI drivers and automatically support any advanced SATA host adapters that are AHCI compatible.

Unfortunately, AHCI drivers are not included by default on the Windows XP and earlier installation CDs, because AHCI was developed long after XP was released. This means, for example, that if you install Windows XP on a system with an integrated SATA host adapter set to AHCI mode, you will probably need to press the F6 key at the beginning of the installation and provide a floppy disk with the AHCI drivers; otherwise, Windows XP will not be able to recognize the drives. The implication here is that the system must include a floppy drive, and you must have copied the drivers to a floppy disk in advance. But what if your system doesn't even include a floppy drive? Fortunately, several solutions are available.

One option is to keep a spare floppy drive in your toolkit and temporarily connect it during the installation. Just open the case, plug in a floppy cable from the floppy drive connector (FDC) on the motherboard to the drive, and connect power to the drive. There is no need to actually mount the drive in the chassis because you will only need to read the disk once at the beginning of the installation.

Another option is to set the SATA host adapter to ATA/IDE compatibility mode (disable AHCI/RAID) in the BIOS Setup, after which you can boot from a standard Windows XP CD and install Windows without requiring special drivers. You could leave the adapter in compatibility mode, but you might be missing out on the performance offered by the advanced capabilities your hard drives support.

Although the first two options can work in most situations, I think the best overall solution is to simply create a custom Windows XP installation disc that already has the SATA AHCI (and even RAID) drivers preinstalled. This can be accomplished via a somewhat tedious manual integration process for each set of drivers, but to make things really easy you can use the menu-driven BTS DriverPacks from www.driverpacks.net to integrate virtually all the popular mass storage drivers directly into your Windows XP install disc. The DriverPacks allow you to easily add all kinds of drivers to your Windows XP installation discs. For example, in addition to the mass storage drivers, I like to integrate the various processor, chipset, and network (both wired and wireless) drivers because all of these still fit on a CD. If you are willing to move to a DVD instead of a CD, you can fit Windows XP and all of the available XP DriverPacks on a single DVD.

Non-Volatile Memory Express (NVMe)

The Advanced Host Controller Interface (AHCI) has long been the preferred software interface for SATA devices. AHCI can be used with conventional SATA as well as SATA Express devices, allowing both to use the same software interface and therefore the same drivers. While using AHCI mode with SATA Express allows for maximum compatibility, it does not allow for maximum performance when interfacing with low-latency devices like solid-state drives (SSDs), which internally behave more like RAM than a spinning disk. To improve the performance of SSDs connected via high-speed PCI Express–based interfaces like SATA Express, a new software interface called the Non-Volatile Memory Host Controller Interface (NVMHCI) was first defined in 2007 by the NVMHCI Workgroup (www.nvmexpress.org), a group including more than 75 major companies from the computing and storage industries. Owing to its intention on being used in combination with PCIe and SATA Express devices, the NVMHCI specification was subsequently named NVM Express (NVMe), and the NVMe specification 1.0 was published in 2011.

Like AHCI before it, NVMe is a software interface specification that defines the commands and functions for communicating with PCIe or SATA Express devices. SSDs are by nature very low latency devices, a characteristic that NVMe is designed to fully exploit. NVMe is also designed to more fully utilize the parallelism built in to modern systems such as multicore hyper-threaded processors, multilane buses, and multi-tasking operating systems. The biggest technical difference between AHCI and NVMe is that AHCI supports a single command queue with up to 32 commands, while NVMe supports up to 64K queues with up to 64K commands per queue. Having many more and much deeper queues allows for commands to be far more rapidly delivered to SSDs, where due to their low-latency characteristics they can be processed much more rapidly than drives with spinning disks.

SATA Express host adapters support both AHCI and NVMe modes. Using AHCI mode will allow for backward compatibility with existing AHCI drivers, while choosing NVMe mode will require new NVMe drivers. Since NVMe drivers were not included by default with Windows 8 and earlier versions, NVMe drivers will need to be supplied during the OS installation procedure for Windows to recognize any devices connected to SATA Express host adapters in NVMe mode. Using AHCI mode instead, you can install Windows Vista and later on SATA Express drives right out of the box, with no additional drivers necessary; however, there will be some loss in performance.

SATA Transfer Modes

SATA transfers data in a completely different manner from PATA. As indicated previously, the transfer rates are 1.5Gbps (150MBps), 3Gbps (300MBps), and 6Gbps (600MBps), with most drives today supporting the 3Gbps or 6Gbps rates. Note that speeds are backward compatible—for example, drives supporting the 6Gbps rate also work at 3Gbps or 1.5Gbps. Note that because SATA is designed to be backward compatible with PATA, some confusion can result because the BIOS and drives can report speeds and modes that emulate PATA settings for backward compatibility.

For example, many motherboards detect and report a SATA drive as supporting Ultra DMA Mode 5 (ATA/100), which is a PATA mode operating at 100MBps. This is obviously incorrect because even the slowest SATA mode (1.5Gbps) is 150MBps, and Ultra DMA modes simply do not apply to SATA drives.

PATA and SATA are completely different electrical and physical specifications, but SATA does *emulate* PATA in a way that makes it completely software transparent. In fact, the PATA emulation in SATA specifically conforms to the ATA-5 specification.

This is especially apparent in the `IDENTIFY DEVICE` command that the autodetect routines use in the BIOS to read the drive parameters. The SATA specification indicates that many of the items returned by `IDENTIFY DEVICE` are to be “set as indicated in ATA/ATAPI-5,” including available UDMA modes and settings.

The SATA 1 specification also says,

> Emulation of parallel ATA device behavior, as perceived by the host BIOS or software driver, is a cooperative effort between the device and the SATA host adapter hardware. The behavior of Command and Control Block registers, PIO and DMA data transfers, resets, and interrupts are emulated. The host adapter contains a set of registers that shadow the contents of the traditional device registers, referred to as the Shadow Register Block. All SATA devices behave like Device 0 devices. Devices shall ignore the DEV bit in the Device/Head field of received Register FISs, and it is the responsibility of the host adapter to gate transmission of Register FISs to devices, as appropriate, based on the value of the DEV bit.

This means the shadow register blocks are "fake" PATA registers, allowing all ATA commands, modes, and so on to be emulated. SATA was designed to be fully software compatible with ATA/ATAPI-5, which is why a SATA drive can report in some ways as if it were PATA or running in PATA modes, even though it isn't.

ATA Features

The ATA standards have gone a long way toward eliminating incompatibilities and problems with interfacing SATA and PATA drives to systems. The ATA specifications define the signals on the cables and connectors, the functions and timings of these signals, the cable specifications, the supported commands, the features, and so on. The following section lists some of the elements and functions the ATA specifications define.

ATA Commands

One of the best features of the ATA interface is the enhanced command set. The ATA command interface was modeled after the WD1003 controller IBM used in the original AT system. All ATA drives must support the original WD command set (eight commands) with no exceptions, which is why ATA drives are so easy to install in systems today. All IBM-compatible systems have built-in ROM BIOS support for the WD1003, so they essentially support ATA as well.

In addition to supporting all the WD1003 commands, the ATA specification added numerous other commands to enhance performance and capabilities. These commands are an optional part of the ATA interface, but several of them are used in most drives available today and are important to the performance and use of ATA drives in general.

Perhaps the most important is the `IDENTIFY DEVICE` command. This command causes the drive to transmit a 512-byte block of data that provides all details about the drive. Through this command, any program (including the system BIOS) can find out exactly which type of drive is connected, including the drive manufacturer, model number, operating parameters, and even serial number of the drive. Many modern BIOSs use this information to automatically receive and enter the drive's parameters into Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor (CMOS) memory, eliminating the need for the user to enter these parameters manually during system configuration. This arrangement helps prevent mistakes that can later lead to data loss when the user no longer remembers what parameters he used during setup.

The `Identify Device` data can tell you many things about your drive, including the following:

- Whether the drive has rotating media (and if so, how fast), or whether it is a solid-state drive (SSD) instead
- Whether the `TRIM` command is supported (or not) on SSDs
- Number of logical block addresses available using LBA mode

- Number of physical cylinders, heads, and sectors available in P-CHS mode
- Number of logical cylinders, heads, and sectors in the current translation L-CHS mode
- Transfer modes (and speeds) supported
- Manufacturer and model number
- Internal firmware revision
- Serial number
- Buffer type/size, indicating sector buffering or caching capabilities
- What security functions are available, and much, much more

Several freely available programs such as HWiNFO (www.hwinfo.com) or CrystalDiskInfo (www.crystalmark.info) can execute this command, then translate and report the information onscreen.

Many other enhanced commands are available, including room for a given drive manufacturer to implement what are called *vendor-unique* commands. Certain vendors often use these commands for features unique to that vendor. Often, vendor-unique commands control features such as low-level formatting and defect management. This is why low-level format or initialization programs can be so specific to a particular manufacturer's ATA drives and why many manufacturers make their own LLF programs available.

ATA Security Mode

Support for drive passwords (called *ATA Security Mode*) was added to the ATA-3 specification in 1995. The proposal adopted in the ATA specification was originally from IBM, which had developed this capability and had already begun incorporating it into ThinkPad systems and IBM 2.5-inch drives. Because it was then incorporated into the official ATA-3 standard (finally published in 1997), most other drive and system manufacturers have also adopted this, especially for laptop systems and 2.5-inch and smaller drives. Note that these passwords are *very* secure. If you lose or forget them, they usually cannot be recovered, and you will never be able to access the data on the drive.

More recently, ATA security has been augmented by drives that support internal encryption/decryption using the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES). Drives supporting AES automatically encrypt all data that is written and automatically decrypt the data when it is read. When combined with a password set via ATA Security mode commands, the data on the drive will be unrecoverable even if the HDD password is bypassed or the media (that is, platters or flash memory chips) are removed from the drive and read directly. When AES encryption is employed on a drive with a strong HDD password, without knowing the HDD password there is essentially no way to recover the data. This type of security is recommended for laptops that can easily be lost or stolen.

Drive security passwords are set via the BIOS Setup, but not all systems support this feature. Most laptops support drive security, but many desktops do not. If supported, two types of drive passwords can be set, called *user* and *master*. The user password locks and unlocks the drive, whereas the master password is used only to unlock. You can set a user password only, or you can set user+master, but you cannot set a master password alone.

When a user password is set (with no master), or when both user+master passwords are set, access to the drive is prevented (even if the drive is moved to a different system), unless the user (or master) password is entered upon system startup.

The master password is designed to be an alternative or backup password for system administrators as a master unlock. With both master and user passwords set, the user is told the user password but not the master password. Subsequently, the user can change the user password as desired; however, a system administrator can still gain access by using the master password.

If a user or user+master password is set, the disk must be unlocked at boot time via a BIOS-generated password prompt. The appearance of the prompt varies from system to system. For example, in ThinkPad systems, an icon consisting of a cylinder with a number above it (indicating the drive number) next to a padlock appears onscreen. If the drive password prompt appears, you must enter it; otherwise, you will be denied access to the drive, and the system will not boot.

As with many security features, a workaround might be possible if you forget your password. In this case, at least one company can either restore the drive to operation (with all the data lost) or restore the drive and the data. That company is Nortek. (See www.nortek.on.ca for more information.) The password-removal procedure is relatively expensive (more than the cost of a new drive in most cases), and you must provide proof of ownership when you send in the drive. As you can see, password restoring is worthwhile only if you absolutely need the data back. Note that even this will not work if the drive employs internal AES encryption. In that case, without the password, the data simply cannot be recovered.

Passwords are not preset on a new drive, but they might be preset if you are buying a used drive or if the people or company you purchased the drive or system from entered them. This is a common ploy when selling drives or systems (especially laptops) on eBay—for example, the seller might set supervisor or drive passwords and hold them until payment is received. Or he might be selling a used (possibly stolen) product "as is," for which he doesn't have the passwords, which renders them useless to the purchaser. Be sure that you do not purchase a used laptop or drive unless you are certain that no supervisor or drive passwords are set.

Most systems also support other power-on or supervisor passwords in the BIOS Setup. In most systems, when you set a supervisor password, it automatically sets the drive password to the same value. In most cases, if a supervisor password is set and it matches the drive user or master password, when you enter the supervisor password, the BIOS automatically enters the drive password at the same time. This means that even though a drive password is set, you might not even know it because the drive password is entered automatically at the same time that you enter the supervisor password; therefore, you won't see a separate prompt for the drive password. However, if the drive is later separated from the system, it will not work on another system or be readable until you enter the correct drive password. Without the services of a company such as Nortek, you can remove a drive password only if you know the password to begin with.

Host Protected Area

Most PCs sold on the market today include some form of automated product recovery or restoration feature that allows a user to easily restore the operating system and other software on the system to the state it was in when the system was new. Originally, this was accomplished via one or more product-recovery discs containing automated scripts that reinstalled all the software that came preinstalled on the system when it was new.

Unfortunately, the discs could be lost or damaged, they were often problematic to use, and including them by default cost manufacturers a lot of money. This prompted PC manufacturers to move the recovery software to a hidden partition of the boot hard drive. However, this does waste some space on the drive—usually several gigabytes. With 60GB or larger drives, this amounts to 5% or less of the total space. Still, even the hidden partition was less than satisfactory because the partition could easily be damaged or overwritten by partitioning software or other utilities, so there was no way to make it secure.

In 1996, Gateway proposed a change to the ATA-4 standard under development that would allow the HPA to be reserved on a drive. This change was ratified, and the HPA feature set was incorporated into the ATA-4 specification that was finally published in 1998. A separate BIOS firmware interface specification called Protected Area Run Time Interface Extension Services (PARTIES) was initiated in

1999 that defined services an operating system could use to access the HPA. The PARTIES standard was completed and published in 2001 as "NCITS 346-2001, Protected Area Run Time Interface Extension Services."

The HPA works by using the optional `ATA SET MAX ADDRESS` command to make the drive appear to the system as slightly smaller. Anything from the new max address (the newly reported end of the drive) to the true end of the drive is considered the HPA and is accessible only using PARTIES commands. This is more secure than a hidden partition because any data past the end of the drive simply cannot be seen by a normal application or even a partitioning utility. Still, if you want to remove the HPA, you can use some options in the BIOS Setup or separate commands to reset the max address, thus exposing the HPA. At that point, you can run something such as Parted Magic or Partition Commander to resize the adjacent partition to include the extra space that was formerly hidden and unavailable.

Starting in 2003, some systems using Phoenix BIOS have included recovery software and diagnostics in the HPA. Most if not all current drives support the HPA command set; however, because of the complexity in dealing with the hidden area, I have seen most manufacturers back away from using the HPA and revert to a more standard (and easier to deal with) hidden partition instead.

◀◀ For more information on the HPA and what might be stored there, see the Chapter 5 section, "Preboot Environment," **p. 287**.

ATAPI

ATAPI is a standard designed to provide the commands necessary for devices such as optical drives, removable media drives such as SuperDisk and Zip, and tape drives that plug into an ordinary SATA or PATA (IDE) connector. Although ATAPI optical drives use the hard disk interface, they don't necessarily look like ordinary hard disks. To the contrary, from a software point of view, they are a completely different kind of animal. They most closely resemble a SCSI device. All modern ATA optical drives support the ATAPI protocols, and generally the terms are synonymous. In other words, an ATAPI optical drive is an ATA optical drive, and vice versa.

Caution

Most systems starting in 1998 began supporting the Phoenix El Torito specification, which enables booting from ATAPI CD or DVD drives. Systems without El Torito support in the BIOS can't boot from an ATAPI CD or DVD drive. Even with ATAPI support in the BIOS, you still must load a driver to use ATAPI under DOS or Windows. Windows 95 and later (including 98 and Me) and Windows NT (including Windows 2000 forward) have native ATAPI support. Some versions of the Windows 98 and Me CD-ROMs are bootable, whereas all Windows NT, 2000, and newer discs are directly bootable on those systems, thus greatly easing installation.

ATA Drive Capacity Limitations

ATA interface versions up through ATA-5 suffered from a drive capacity limitation of about 137GB (billion bytes). Depending on the BIOS used, you can further reduce this limitation to 8.4GB, or even as low as 528MB (million bytes). This is due to limitations in both the BIOS and the ATA interface, which when combined create even further limitations. To understand these limits, you have to look at the BIOS (software) and ATA (hardware) interfaces together.

Note

In addition to the BIOS/ATA limitations discussed in this section, various operating system limitations exist. These are described later in this chapter.

The limitations when dealing with ATA drives are those of the ATA interface as well as the BIOS interface used to talk to the drive. A summary of the limitations is shown in Table 7.12.

Table 7.12 ATA/IDE Capacity Limitations for Various Sector Addressing Methods

Sector Addressing Method	Total Sectors Calculation	Maximum Total Sectors	Maximum Capacity (Bytes)	Capacity (Decimal)	Capacity (Binary)
CHS: BIOS w/o TL	1024 ×16 × 63	1,032,192	528,482,304	528.48MB	504.00MiB
CHS: BIOS w/ bit-shift TL	1024 × 240 × 63	15,482,880	7,927,234,560	7.93GB	7.38GiB
CHS: BIOS w/ LBA-assist TL	1024 × 255 × 63	16,450,560	8,422,686,720	8.42GB	7.84GiB
CHS: BIOS INT13h	1024 × 256 × 63	16,515,072	8,455,716,864	8.46GB	7.88GiB
CHS: ATA-1/ ATA-5	65536 × 16 × 255	267,386,880	136,902,082,560	136.90GB	127.50GiB
LBA: ATA-1/ ATA-5	2^{28}	268,435,456	137,438,953,472	137.44GB	128.00GiB
LBA: ATA-6+	2^{48}	281,474,976,710,655	144,115,188,075,855,872	144.12PB	128.00PiB
LBA: EDD BIOS	2^{64}	18,446,744,073, 709,551,616	9,444,732,965,739, 290,427,392	9.44ZB	8.00ZiB

BIOS = Basic input/output system
ATA = AT Attachment (IDE)
CHS = Cylinder head sector
LBA = Logical block (sector) address
w/ = with
w/o = without
TL = Translation
INT13h = Interrupt 13 hex
EDD = Enhanced Disk Drive specification (Phoenix/ATA)

MB = megabyte (million bytes)
MiB = mebibyte
GB = gigabyte (billion bytes)
GiB = gibibyte
PB = petabyte (quadrillion bytes)
PiB = pebibyte
ZB = zettabyte (sextillion bytes)
ZiB = zebibyte

This section details the differences between the various sector-addressing methods and the limitations incurred by using them.

Prefixes for Decimal and Binary Multiples

Many readers are unfamiliar with the MiB (mebibyte), GiB (gibibyte), and so on designations I am using in this section and throughout the book. These are part of a standard designed to eliminate confusion between decimal- and binary-based multiples, especially in computer systems. Standard SI (system international or metric system) units are based on multiples of 10. This worked well for most things, but not for computers, which operate in a binary world where most numbers are based on powers of 2. This has resulted in different meanings being assigned to the same prefix—for example, 1KB (kilobyte) could mean either 1,000 (10^3) bytes or 1,024 (2^{10}) bytes. To eliminate confusion, in December 1998 the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) approved as an international standard the prefix names and symbols for binary multiples used in data processing and transmission. Some of these prefixes are shown in Table 7.13.

Table 7.13 Standard Prefix Names and Symbols for Decimal and Binary Multiples

Binary Prefixes:				**Binary Prefixes:**				
Factor	**Symbol**	**Name**	**Value**	**Factor**	**Symbol**	**Name**	**Derivation**	**Value**
10^3	k	Kilo	1,000	2^{10}	Ki	Kibi	Kilobinary	1,024
10^6	M	Mega	1,000,000	2^{20}	Mi	Mebi	Megabinary	1,048,576
10^9	G	Giga	1,000,000,000	2^{30}	Gi	Gibi	Gigabinary	1,073,741,824
10^{12}	T	Tera	1,000,000,000,000	2^{40}	Ti	Tebi	Terabinary	1,099,511,627,776
10^{15}	P	Peta	1,000,000,000,000,000	2^{50}	Pi	Pebi	Petabinary	1,125,899,906,842,624
10^{18}	E	Exa	1,000,000,000,000,000,000	2^{60}	Ei	Exbi	Exabinary	1,152,921,504,606,846,976
10^{21}	Z	Zetta	1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000	2^{70}	Zi	Zebi	Zettabinary	1,180,591,620,717,411,303,424

The symbol for kilo (k) is in lowercase (which is technically correct according to the SI standard), whereas all other decimal prefixes are uppercase.

Under this standard terminology, a megabyte would be 1,000,000 bytes, whereas a mebibyte would be 1,048,576 bytes.

Note

For more information on these industry-standard decimal and binary prefixes, check out the National Institute for Standards and Technology (NIST) website at http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/prefixes.html.

BIOS Limitations

Motherboard ROM BIOSs have been updated throughout the years to support larger and larger drives. Table 7.14 shows the most important relative dates when drive capacity limits were changed.

Table 7.14 Dates of Changes to Drive Capacity Limitations in the ROM BIOS

BIOS Date	**Capacity Limit**
August 1994	528MB
January 1998	8.4GB
September 2002	137GB
January 2011	2.2TB*

**Note: A UEFI BIOS or enabled UEFI Boot option is required to boot from 2.2TB or larger drives. Some BIOS, had this capability as early as 2006, but it wasn't widespread until 2011.*

These dates are when the limits were broken, such that BIOSs older than August 1994 are generally limited to drives of up to 528MB, whereas BIOSs older than January 1998 are generally limited to 8.4GB. Most BIOSs dated 1998 or newer support drives up to 137GB, and those dated September 2002 or newer should support drives larger than 137GB. These are only general guidelines, though; to accurately determine this for a specific system, you should check with your motherboard manufacturer. You can also use the System Information for Windows (SIW) utility from http://gtopala.com/, which tells you the BIOS date from your system and specifically whether your system supports the Enhanced Disk Drive specification (which means drives over 8.4GB).

If your BIOS does not support EDD (drives over 8.4GB), the three possible solutions are as follows:

- Upgrade your motherboard BIOS to a 1998 or newer version that supports >8.4GB.
- Install a BIOS upgrade card, such as the UltraATA cards from www.siig.com.
- Install a software patch to add >8.4GB support.

Of these, the first one is the most desirable because it is usually free. Visit your motherboard manufacturer's website to see whether it has newer BIOSs available for your motherboard that support large drives. If it doesn't, the next best thing is to use a card such as one of the UltraATA cards from SIIG (www.siig.com). I almost never recommend the software-only solution because it merely installs a software patch in the boot sector area of the hard drive, which can result in numerous problems when booting from different drives, installing new drives, or recovering data.

The most recent 2.2TB barrier is not a true BIOS barrier in the same way that the previous barriers were. The issue here is not that the BIOS can't recognize drives 2.2TB or larger; the problem is that it can't normally *boot* from them. Booting from a 2.2TB or larger drive requires a UEFI (Unified Extensible Firmware Interface) BIOS, or at a minimum one with an enabled UEFI Boot option. Drives larger than 2.2TB can be used as data drives even without a UEFI BIOS. Finally, note that both booting from and recognizing a 2.2TB or larger drive as a data drive also requires that the drive be formatted using a GPT (GUID Partition Table). The operating system must have GPT support as well.

CHS Versus LBA

There are two primary methods to address (or number) sectors on an ATA drive. The first method is called *CHS* (cylinder head sector) after the three respective coordinate numbers used to address each sector of the drive. The second method is called *LBA* (logical block address) and uses a single number to address each sector on a drive. CHS was derived from the physical way drives were constructed (and is how they work internally), whereas LBA evolved as a simpler and more logical way to number the sectors regardless of the internal physical construction.

▶▶ For more information on cylinders, heads, and sectors as they are used internally within the drive, see the Chapter 9 section, "HDD Operation," **p. 466**.

The process of reading a drive sequentially in CHS mode starts with cylinder 0, head 0, and sector 1 (which is the first sector on the disk). Next, all the remaining sectors on that first track are read; then the next head is selected; and then all the sectors on that track are read. This goes on until all the heads on the first cylinder are read. Then the next cylinder is selected, and the sequence starts again. Think of CHS as an odometer of sorts: The sector numbers must roll over before the head number can change, and the head numbers must roll over before the cylinder can change.

The process of reading a drive sequentially in LBA mode starts with sector 0, then 1, then 2, and so on. The first sector on the drive in CHS mode would be 0,0,1, and the same sector in LBA mode would be 0.

As an example, imagine a drive with one platter, two heads (both sides of the platter are used), two tracks on each platter (cylinders), and two sectors on each track. We would say the drive has two cylinders (tracks per side), two heads (sides), and two sectors per track. This would result in a total capacity of eight (2 × 2 × 2) sectors. Noting that cylinders and heads begin numbering from 0—whereas physical sectors on a track number from 1. Using CHS addressing, we would say the first sector on the drive is cylinder 0, head 0, sector 1 (0,0,1); the second sector is 0,0,2; the third sector is 0,1,1; the fourth sector is 0,1,2; and so on until we get to the last sector, which would be 1,1,2.

Now imagine that we could take the eight sectors and—rather than refer directly to the physical cylinder, head, and sector—number the sectors in order from 0 to 7. Thus, if we wanted to address the fourth sector on the drive, we could reference it as sector 0,1,2 in CHS mode or as sector 3 in LBA mode. Table 7.15 shows the correspondence between CHS and LBA sector numbers for this eight-sector imaginary drive.

Table 7.15 CHS and LBA Sector Numbers for an Imaginary Drive with Two Cylinders, Two Heads, and Two Sectors per Track (Eight Sectors Total)

Mode	Equivalent Sector Numbers							
CHS:	0,0,1	0,0,2	0,1,1	0,1,2	1,0,1	1,0,2	1,1,1	1,1,2
LBA:	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

As you can see from this example, using LBA numbers is simpler and generally easier to handle; however, when the PC was first developed, all BIOS and ATA drive-level addressing was done using CHS addressing.

CHS/LBA and LBA/CHS Conversions

You can address the same sectors in either CHS or LBA mode. The conversion from CHS to LBA is always consistent in that for a given drive, a particular CHS address always converts to a given LBA address, and vice versa. The ATA-1 document specifies a simple formula that can be used to convert CHS parameters to LBA:

$$LBA = (((C \times HPC) + H) \times SPT) + S - 1$$

By reversing this formula, you can convert the other way—that is, from LBA back to CHS:

C = int (LBA / SPT / HPC)

H = int ((LBA / SPT) mod HPC)

S = (LBA mod SPT) + 1

For these formulas, the abbreviations are defined as follows:

LBA = Logical block address

C = Cylinder

H = Head

S = Sector

HPC = Heads per cylinder (total number of heads)

SPT = Sectors per track

int X = Integer portion of X

X mod Y = Modulus (remainder) of X/Y

Using these formulas, you can calculate the LBA for any given CHS address, and vice versa. Given a drive of 16,383 cylinders, 16 heads, and 63 sectors per track, Table 7.16 shows the equivalent CHS and LBA addresses.

Table 7.16 Equivalent CHS and LBA Sector Numbers for a Drive with 16,383 Cylinders, 16 Heads, and 63 Sectors per Track (16,514,064 Sectors Total)

Cylinder	Head	Sector	LBA
0	0	1	0
0	0	63	62
0	1	0	63
999	15	63	1,007,999
1,000	0	1	1,008,000
9,999	15	63	10,079,999
10,000	0	1	10,080,000
16,382	15	63	16,514,063

BIOS Commands Versus ATA Commands

In addition to the two methods of sector addressing (CHS or LBA), there are two levels of interface where sector addressing occurs. One interface is where the operating system talks to the BIOS (using driver commands); the other is where the BIOS talks to the drive (using ATA commands). The specific commands at these levels are different, but both support CHS and LBA modes. Figure 7.18 illustrates the two interface levels.

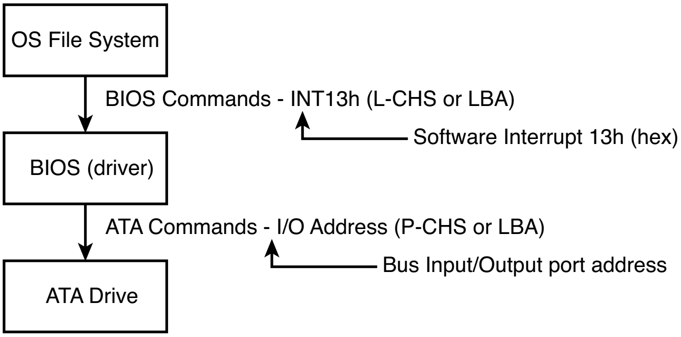


FIGURE 7.18 The relationship between BIOS and physical sector addressing. (In this figure, L-CHS stands for Logical CHS, and P-CHS stands for Physical CHS.)

When the operating system talks to the BIOS to read or write sectors, it issues commands via software interrupt (not the same as an IRQ) INT13h, which is how the BIOS subroutines for disk access are called. Various INT13h subfunctions allow sectors to be read or written using either CHS or LBA addressing. The BIOS routines then convert the BIOS commands into ATA hardware-level commands, which are sent over the bus I/O ports to the drive controller. Commands at the ATA hardware level can also use either CHS or LBA addressing, although the limitations are different. Whether your BIOS and drive use CHS or LBA addressing depends on the drive capacity, age of the BIOS and drive, BIOS Setup settings used, and operating system used.

CHS Limitations (the 528MB Barrier)

The original BIOS-based driver for hard disks is accessed via software interrupt 13h (13 hex) and offers functions for reading and writing drives at the sector level. Standard INT13h functions require that a particular sector be addressed by its cylinder, head, and sector location—otherwise known as *CHS addressing*. This interface is used by the operating system and low-level disk utilities to access the drive. IBM originally wrote the INT13h interface for the BIOS on the PC XT hard disk controller in 1983, and in 1984 the company incorporated it into the AT motherboard BIOS. This interface used numbers to define the particular cylinder, head, and sector being addressed. Table 7.17, which shows the standard INT13h BIOS CHS parameter limits, includes the maximum values for these numbers.

Table 7.17 INT13h BIOS CHS Parameter Limits

Field	Field Size	Maximum Value	Range	Total Usable
Cylinder	10 bits	1,024	0–1023	1,024
Head	8 bits	256	0–255	256
Sector	6 bits	64	1–63	63

The concept of a maximum value given a number of digits is simple: If you had, for example, a hotel with two-digit decimal room numbers, you could have only 100 (10^2) rooms, numbered 0–99. The CHS numbers used by the standard BIOS INT13h interface are binary, and with a 10-bit number being used to count cylinders, you can have only 1,024 (210) maximum, numbered 0–1,023. Because the head is identified by an 8-bit number, the maximum number of heads is 256 (2^8), numbered 0–255. Finally, with sectors per track there is a minor difference. Sectors on a track are identified by a 6-bit number, which would normally allow a maximum of 64 (2^6) sectors; however, because sectors are numbered starting with 1 (instead of 0), the range is limited to 1–63, which means a total of 63 sectors per track is the maximum the BIOS can handle.

These BIOS limitations are true for all BIOS versions or programs that rely on CHS addressing. Using the maximum numbers possible for CHS at the BIOS level, you can address a drive with 1,024 cylinders, 256 heads, and 63 sectors per track. Because each sector is 512 bytes, the math works out as follows:

```
                Max. Values
---------------------------
    Cylinders         1,024
        Heads           256
Sectors/Track            63
===========================
Total Sectors    16,515,072
---------------------------
Total Bytes   8,455,716,864
Megabytes (MB)        8,456
Mebibytes (MiB)       8,064
Gigabytes (GB)          8.4
Gibibytes (GiB)         7.8
```

From these calculations, you can see that the maximum capacity drive addressable via the standard BIOS INT13h interface is about 8.4GB (where GB equals roughly 1 billion bytes), or 7.8GiB (where GiB means *gigabinarybytes*).

Unfortunately, the BIOS INT13h limits are not the only limitations that apply. Limits also exist in the ATA interface. The ATA CHS limits are shown in Table 7.18.

Table 7.18 Standard ATA CHS Parameter Limitations

Field	Field Size	Maximum Value	Range	Total Usable
Cylinder	16 bits	65,536	0–65,535	65,536
Head	4 bits	16	0–15	16
Sector	8 bits	256	1–255	255

As you can see, the ATA interface uses different-sized fields to store CHS values. Note that the ATA limits are higher than the BIOS limits for cylinders and sectors but lower than the BIOS limit for heads. The CHS limits for capacity according to the ATA-1 through ATA-5 specification are as follows:

```
                Max. Values
-----------------------------
    Cylinders          65,536
        Heads              16
Sectors/Track             255
=============================
Total Sectors     267,386,880
-----------------------------
Total Bytes   136,902,082,560
Megabytes (MB)        136,902
Mebibytes (MiB)       130,560
Gigabytes (GB)          136.9
Gibibytes (GiB)         127.5
```

When you combine the limitations of the BIOS and ATA CHS parameters, you end up with the situation shown in Table 7.19.

Table 7.19 Combined BIOS and ATA CHS Parameter Limits

	BIOS CHS Parameter Limits	ATA CHS Parameter Limits	Combined CHS Parameter Field Limits
Cylinder	1,024	65,536	1,024
Head	256	16	16
Sector	63	255	63
Total sectors	16,515,072	267,386,880	1,032,192
Maximum capacity	8.4GB	136.9GB	528MB

As you can see, the lowest common denominator of the combined CHS limits results in maximum usable parameters of 1,024 cylinders, 16 heads, and 63 sectors, which results in a maximum drive capacity of 528MB. This became known as the 528MB barrier (also called the 504MiB barrier), and it affects virtually all PCs built in 1993 or earlier.

CHS Translation (Breaking the 528MB Barrier)

Having a barrier limiting drive capacity to 528MB or less wasn't a problem when the largest drives available were smaller than that. But by 1994, drive technology had developed such that making drives larger than what the combined BIOS and ATA limitations could address was possible. Clearly a fix for the problem was needed.

Starting in 1993, the BIOS developer Phoenix Technologies began working on BIOS extensions to work around the combined CHS limits. In January of 1994, the company released the "BIOS Enhanced Disk Drive (EDD) Specification," which was later republished by the T13 committee (also responsible for ATA) as "BIOS Enhanced Disk Drive Services (EDD)." The EDD documents detail several methods for circumventing the limitations of older BIOSs without causing compatibility problems with existing software. These include the following:

- BIOS INT13h extensions supporting 64-bit LBA
- Bit-shift geometric CHS translation
- LBA-assist geometric CHS translation

The method for dealing with the CHS problem was called *translation* because it enabled additional subroutines in the BIOS to translate CHS parameters from ATA maximums to BIOS maximums (and vice versa). In an effort to make its methods standard among the entire PC industry, Phoenix released the EDD document publicly and allowed the technology to be used free of charge, even among its competitors such as AMI and Award. The T-13 committee in charge of ATA subsequently adopted the EDD standard and incorporated it into official ATA documents.

Starting in 1994, most BIOSs began implementing the Phoenix-designed CHS translation methods, which enabled drives up to the BIOS limit of 8.4GB to be supported. The fix involved what is termed *parameter translation* at the BIOS level, which adapted or translated the cylinder, head, and sector numbers to fit within the allowable BIOS parameters. There are two types of translation: One works via a technique called *CHS bit-shift* (usually called "Large" or "Extended CHS" in the BIOS Setup), and the other uses a technique called *LBA-assist* (usually called "LBA" in the BIOS Setup). These refer to the different mathematical methods of doing essentially the same thing: converting one set of CHS numbers to another.

CHS bit-shift translation manipulates the cylinder and head numbers but does not change the sector number. It begins with the physical (drive reported) cylinders and heads and, using some simple division and multiplication, comes up with altered numbers for the cylinders and heads. The sectors-per-track value is not translated and is passed unaltered. The term *bit-shift* is used because the division and multiplication math is actually done in the BIOS software by shifting bits in the CHS address.

With CHS bit-shift translation, the drive reported (physical) parameters are referred to as *P-CHS*, and the BIOS-altered logical parameters are referred to as *L-CHS*. After the settings are made in the BIOS Setup, L-CHS addresses are automatically translated to P-CHS at the BIOS level. This enables the operating system to send commands to the BIOS using L-CHS parameters, which the BIOS automatically converts to P-CHS when it talks to the drive using ATA commands. Table 7.20 shows the rules for calculating CHS bit-shift translation.

CHS bit-shift translation is based on dividing the physical cylinder count by a power of 2 to bring it under the 1,024 cylinder BIOS INT13h limit and then multiplying the heads by the same power of 2, leaving the sector count unchanged. The power of 2 used depends on the cylinder count, as indicated in Table 7.20.

Table 7.20 CHS Bit-Shift Translation Rules

Physical (Drive Reported) Cylinders	Physical Heads	Logical Cylinders	Logical Heads	Maximum Capacity
1 < C <= 1,024	1 < H <= 16	C = C	H = H	528MB
1,024 < C <= 2,048	1 < H <= 16	C = C/2	H = H × 2	1GB
2,048 < C <= 4,096	1 < H <= 16	C = C/4	H = H × 4	2.1GB
4,096 < C <= 8,192	1 < H <= 16	C = C/8	H = H × 8	4.2GB
8,192 < C <= 16,384	1 < H <= 16	C = C/16	H = H × 16	8.4GB

The drive reported sector count is not translated.
The logical heads value can't exceed 255 with some operating systems, such as DOS/Win9x/Me.

Here is an example of CHS bit-shift translation:

```
                                    Bit-shift
                          P-CHS         L-CHS
                     Parameters    Parameters
---------------------------------------------
      Cylinders           8,000         1,000
          Heads              16           128
  Sectors/Track              63            63
=============================================
  Total Sectors       8,064,000     8,064,000
---------------------------------------------
    Total Bytes   4,128,768,000 4,128,768,000
 Megabytes (MB)           4,129         4,129
Mebibytes (MiB)           3,938         3,938
 Gigabytes (GB)            4.13          4.13
Gibibytes (GiB)            3.85          3.85
```

This example shows a drive with 8,000 cylinders and 16 heads. The physical cylinder count is way above the BIOS limit of 1,024, so if CHS bit-shift translation is selected in the BIOS Setup, the BIOS then divides the cylinder count by 2, 4, 8, or 16 to bring it below 1,024. In this case, it would divide by 8, which results in a new logical cylinder count of 1,000—which is below the 1,024 maximum. Because the cylinder count is divided by 8, the head count is then multiplied by the same number, resulting in 128 logical heads, which is also below the limit the BIOS can handle.

So, although the drive reports having 8,000 cylinders and 16 heads, the BIOS and all software (including the operating system) instead see the drive as having 1,000 cylinders and 128 heads. Note that the 63 sectors/track figure is simply carried over without change. The result is that by using the logical parameters, the BIOS can see the entire 4.13GB drive and won't be limited to just the first 528MB.

When you install a drive, you don't have to perform the translation math to convert the cylinders and heads; the BIOS does that for you automatically. All you have to do is allow the BIOS to autodetect the P-CHS parameters and then enable the translation in the BIOS Setup. Selecting Large or ECHS translation in the BIOS Setup enables the CHS bit-shift. The BIOS does the rest of the work for you.

CHS bit-shift is a simple and fast (code-wise) scheme that can work with all drives, but unfortunately it can't properly translate all theoretically possible drive geometries for drives under 8.4GB. To solve this, an addendum was added to the ATA-2 specification to specifically require drives to report certain ranges of geometries to allow bit-shift translation to work. Thus, all drives that conform to the ATA-2 specification (or higher) can be translated using this method.

The 2.1GB and 4.2GB Barriers

Some BIOSs incorrectly allocated only 12 bits for the P-CHS cylinder field, thereby allowing a maximum of 4,096 cylinders. Combined with the standard 16-head and 63-sector limits, this resulted in the inability to support any drives over 2.1GB in capacity. Fortunately, this BIOS defect affected only a limited number of systems with BIOS dates prior to about mid-1996.

Even so, some problems still existed with bit-shift translation. Because of the way DOS and Windows 9x/Me were written, they could not properly handle a drive with 256 heads. This was a problem for drives larger than 4.2GB because the CHS bit-shift translation rules typically resulted in 256 heads as a logical value, as seen in the following example:

```
                                     Bit-shift
                          P-CHS          L-CHS
                     Parameters     Parameters
----------------------------------------------
       Cylinders         12,000            750
           Heads             16            256
   Sectors/Track             63             63
==============================================
   Total Sectors     12,096,000     12,096,000
----------------------------------------------
     Total Bytes  6,193,152,000  6,193,152,000
  Megabytes (MB)          6,193          6,193
 Mebibytes (MiB)          5,906          5,906
  Gigabytes (GB)           6.19           6.19
 Gibibytes (GiB)           5.77           5.77
```

This scheme failed when you tried to install Windows 9x/Me (or DOS) on a drive larger than 4.2GB because the L-CHS parameters included 256 heads. Any BIOS that implemented this scheme essentially had a 4.2GB barrier, so installing a drive larger than that and selecting CHS bit-shift translation caused the drive to fail. Note that this was not a problem for Windows NT or later.

Note

The BIOS is not actually at fault here; the problem instead lies with the DOS/Win9x/Me file system code, which stores the sector-per-track number as an 8-bit value. The number 256 causes a problem because 256 equals 100000000b, which takes 9 bits to store. The value 255 (which equals 11111111b) is the largest value that can fit in an 8-bit binary register and is therefore the maximum number of heads those operating systems can support.

To solve this problem, CHS bit-shift translation was revised by adding a rule such that if the drive reported 16 heads and more than 8,192 cylinders (which would result in a 256-head translation), the P-CHS head value would be assumed to be 15 (instead of 16) and the P-CHS cylinder value would be multiplied by 16/15 to compensate. These adjusted cylinder and head values would then be translated. The following example shows the results:

```
                                         Bit-shift   Revised Bit-
                          P-CHS          L-CHS    shift L-CHS
                     Parameters     Parameters     Parameters
-------------------------------------------------------------
       Cylinders         12,000            750            800
           Heads             16            256            240
   Sectors/Track             63             63             63
=============================================================
   Total Sectors     12,096,000     12,096,000     12,096,000
-------------------------------------------------------------
     Total Bytes  6,193,152,000  6,193,152,000  6,193,152,000
  Megabytes (MB)          6,193          6,193          6,193
 Mebibytes (MiB)          5,906          5,906          5,906
  Gigabytes (GB)           6.19           6.19           6.19
 Gibibytes (GiB)           5.77           5.77           5.77
```

As you can see from this example, a drive with 12,000 cylinders and 16 heads translates to 750 cylinders and 256 heads using the standard CHS bit-shift scheme. The revised CHS bit-shift scheme rule does a double translation in this case, first changing the 16 heads to 15 and then multiplying the 12,000 cylinders by 16/15, resulting in 12,800 cylinders. Then, the new cylinder value is CHS bit-shift-translated (it is divided by 16), resulting in 800 logical cylinders. Likewise, the 15 heads are multiplied by 16, resulting in 240 logical heads. If the logical cylinder count calculates to more than 1,024, it is truncated to 1,024. In this case, what started out as 12,000 cylinders and 16 heads P-CHS becomes 800 cylinders and 240 heads (instead of 750 cylinders and 256 heads) L-CHS, which works around the bug in the DOS/Win9x/Me operating systems.

So far, all my examples have been clean—that is, the L-CHS parameters have calculated to the same capacity as the P-CHS parameters. Unfortunately, it doesn't always work out that way. The following shows a more typical example in the real world. Several 8.4GB drives from Maxtor, Quantum, Seagate, and others report 16,383 cylinders and 16 heads P-CHS. For those drives, the translations would work out as follows:

```
                                         Bit-shift   Revised Bit-
                          P-CHS          L-CHS    shift L-CHS
                     Parameters     Parameters     Parameters
-------------------------------------------------------------
       Cylinders         16,383          1,023          1,024
           Heads             16            256            240
   Sectors/Track             63             63             63
=============================================================
   Total Sectors     16,514,064     16,498,944     15,482,880
-------------------------------------------------------------
     Total Bytes  8,455,200,768  8,447,459,328  7,927,234,560
  Megabytes (MB)          8,455          8,447          7,927
 Mebibytes (MiB)          8,064          8,056          7,560
  Gigabytes (GB)           8.46           8.45           7.93
 Gibibytes (GiB)           7.87           7.87           7.38
```

Note that the revised CHS bit-shift translation rules result in supporting only 7.93GB of the 8.46GB total on the drive. In fact, the parameters shown (with 240 heads) are the absolute maximum that revised CHS bit-shift supports. Fortunately, another translation mode is available that improves this situation.

LBA-Assist Translation

The LBA-assist translation method places no artificial limits on the reported drive geometries, but it works only on drives that support LBA addressing at the ATA interface level. Fortunately, though, virtually all ATA drives larger than 2GB support LBA. LBA-assist translation takes the CHS parameters the drive reports, multiplies them together to get a calculated LBA maximum value (total number of sectors), and then uses this calculated LBA number to derive the translated CHS parameters. Table 7.21 shows the rules for LBA-assist translation.

Table 7.21 LBA-Assist Translation Rules

	Logical Cylinders	Logical Heads	Logical Sectors
1 < T <= 1,032,192	T/1,008	16	63
1,032,192 < T <= 2,064,384	T/2,016	32	63
2,064,384 < T <= 4,128,768	T/4,032	64	63
4,128,768 < T <= 8,257,536	T/8,064	128	63
8,257,536 < T <= 16,450,560	T/16,065	255	63

T = Total sectors, calculated by multiplying the drive-reported P-CHS parameters (C × H × S)

LBA-assist translation fixes the sectors at 63 no matter what and divides and multiplies the cylinders and heads by predetermined values depending on the total number of sectors. This results in a set of L-CHS parameters the operating system uses to communicate with the BIOS. The L-CHS numbers are then translated to LBA numbers at the ATA interface level. Because LBA mode is more flexible at translating, you should use it in most cases instead of CHS bit-shift.

Normally, both the CHS bit-shift and LBA-assist translations generate the same L-CHS geometry for a given drive. This should always be true if the drive reports 63 sectors per track and 4, 8, or 16 heads. In the following example, both translation schemes result in identical L-CHS values:

```
                            Revised bit-     LBA-assist
                     P-CHS   shift L-CHS          L-CHS
                Parameters    Parameters     Parameters
-------------------------------------------------------------
     Cylinders       8,192         1,024          1,024
         Heads          16           128            128
 Sectors/Track          63            63             63
=============================================================
 Total Sectors   8,257,536     8,257,536      8,257,536
-------------------------------------------------------------
   Total Bytes 4,227,858,432 4,227,858,432 4,227,858,432
Megabytes (MB)       4,228         4,228          4,228
Mebibytes (MiB)      4,032         4,032          4,032
Gigabytes (GB)        4.23          4.23           4.23
Gibibytes (GiB)       3.94          3.94           3.94
```

However, if the drive reports a value other than 63 sectors per track or has other than 4, 8, or 16 heads, LBA-assist translation does not result in the same parameters as CHS bit-shift translation. In the following example, different translations result:

	P-CHS Parameters	Revised bit-shift L-CHS Parameters	LBA-assist L-CHS Parameters
Cylinders	16,383	1,024	1,024
Heads	16	240	255
Sectors/Track	63	63	63
Total Sectors	16,514,064	15,482,880	16,450,560
Total Bytes	8,455,200,768	7,927,234,560	8,422,686,720
Megabytes (MB)	8,455	7,927	8,423
Mebibytes (MiB)	8,064	7,560	8,033
Gigabytes (GB)	8.46	7.93	8.42
Gibibytes (GiB)	7.87	7.38	7.84

The LBA-assist translation supports 8.42GB, which is nearly 500MB more than the revised CHS bit-shift translation. More importantly, these translations are different, which can result in problems if you change translation modes with data on the drive. If you were to set up and format a drive using CHS bit-shift translation and then change to LBA-assist translation, the interpreted geometry could change and the drive could then become unreadable until it is repartitioned and reformatted (which would destroy all the data). Bottom line: After you select a translation method, don't plan on changing it unless you have your data securely backed up.

Virtually all PC BIOSs since 1994 have translation capability in the BIOS Setup, and virtually all offer both translation modes as well as an option to disable translation entirely. If both CHS bit-shift and LBA-assist translation modes are offered, you should probably choose the LBA method of translation because it is the more efficient and flexible of the two. LBA-assist translation also gets around the 4.2GB operating system bug because it is designed to allow a maximum of 255 logical heads no matter what.

You usually can tell whether your BIOS supports translation by the capability to specify more than 1,024 cylinders in the BIOS Setup, although this can be misleading. The best clue is to look for the translation setting parameters in the ATA/IDE drive setup page in the BIOS Setup. See Chapter 5 for more information on how to enter the BIOS Setup on your system. If you see drive-related settings, such as LBA or ECHS (sometimes called Large or Extended), these are telltale signs of a BIOS with translation support. Most BIOSs with a date of 1994 or later include this capability, although some AMI BIOS versions from the mid-1990s locate the LBA setting on a screen different from the hard drive configuration screen. If your system currently does not support parameter translation, you might be able to get an upgrade from your motherboard manufacturer or install a BIOS upgrade card with this capability, such as the LBA Pro card from eSupport.com.

Table 7.22 summarizes the four ways today's BIOSs can handle addressing sectors on the drive: Standard CHS (no translation), Extended CHS translation, LBA translation, and pure LBA addressing.

Table 7.22 Drive Sector Addressing Methods

BIOS Mode	OS to BIOS	BIOS to Drive
Standard (Normal), no translation	P-CHS	P-CHS
CHS bit-shift (ECHS) translation	L-CHS	P-CHS
LBA-assist (LBA) translation	L-CHS	LBA
Pure LBA (EDD BIOS)	LBA	LBA

Standard CHS has only one possible translation step internal to the drive. The drive's actual physical geometry is completely invisible from the outside with all zoned recorded ATA drives today. The cylinders, heads, and sectors printed on the label for use in the BIOS Setup are purely logical geometry and do not represent the actual physical parameters. Standard CHS addressing is limited to 16 heads and 1,024 cylinders, which provides a limit of 504MiB (528MB).

This is often called "Normal" in the BIOS Setup and causes the BIOS to behave like an old-fashioned one without translation. Use this setting if your drive has fewer than 1,024 cylinders or if you want to use the drive with an operating system that doesn't require translation.

ECHS, or "Large" in the BIOS Setup, is CHS bit-shift, and most BIOSs from 1997 and later use the revised method (240 logical heads maximum).

LBA, as selected in the BIOS Setup, indicates LBA-assist translation, not pure LBA mode. This enables software to operate using L-CHS parameters while the BIOS talks to the drive in LBA mode.

The only way to select a pure LBA mode, from the OS to the BIOS as well as from the BIOS to the drive, is with a drive that is over 8.4GB. All drives over 137GB must be addressed via LBA at both the BIOS and drive levels, and most PC BIOSs automatically address any drive over 8.4GB in that manner, as well. In that case, no special BIOS Setup settings are necessary, other than setting the type to auto or autodetect.

Caution

A word of warning with these BIOS translation settings: If you have a drive 8.4GB or less in capacity and switch between Standard CHS, ECHS, or LBA, the BIOS can change the (translated) geometry. The same thing can happen if you transfer a disk that has been formatted on an old, non-LBA computer to a new one that uses LBA. This causes the logical CHS geometry seen by the operating system to change and the data to appear in the wrong location from where it actually is! This can cause you to lose access to your data if you are not careful. I always recommend recording the CMOS Setup screens associated with the hard disk configuration so that you can properly match the setup of a drive to the settings to which it was originally set. This does not affect drives over 8.4GB because in those cases pure LBA is automatically selected.

The 8.4GB Barrier

Although CHS translation breaks the 528MB barrier, it runs into another barrier at 8.4GB. Supporting drives larger than 8.4GB requires leaving CHS behind and changing from CHS to LBA addressing at the BIOS level. The ATA interface had always supported LBA addressing, even in the original ATA-1 specification. One problem was that LBA support at the ATA level originally was optional, but the main problem was that there was no LBA support at the BIOS interface level. You could set LBA-assist translation in the BIOS Setup, but all that did was convert the drive LBA numbers to CHS numbers at the BIOS interface level.

Phoenix Technologies recognized that the BIOS interface needed to move from CHS to LBA early on and, beginning in 1994, published the “BIOS Enhanced Disk Drive Specification (EDD),” which addressed this problem with new extended INT13h BIOS services that worked with LBA rather than CHS addresses.

To ensure industry-wide support and compatibility for these new BIOS functions, in 1996 Phoenix turned this document over to the International Committee on Information Technology Standards (INCITS) T13 technical committee for further enhancement and certification as a standard called the “BIOS Enhanced Disk Drive Specification (EDD).” Starting in 1998, most of the other BIOS manufacturers began installing EDD support in their BIOS, enabling BIOS-level LBA mode support for ATA drives larger than 8.4GB. Coincidentally (or not), this support arrived just in time because ATA drives of that size and larger became available that same year.

The EDD document describes new extended INT13h BIOS commands that allow LBA addressing up to 2^{64} sectors, which results in a theoretical maximum capacity of more than 9.44ZB (zettabytes, or quadrillion bytes). That is the same as saying 9.44 trillion GB, which is 9.44×10^{21} bytes or, to be more precise, 9,444,732,965,739,290,427,392 bytes! I say theoretical capacity because even though by 1998 the BIOS could handle up to 2^{64} sectors, ATA drives were still using only 28-bit addressing (2^{28} sectors) at the ATA interface level. This limited an ATA drive to 268,435,456 sectors, which was a capacity of 137,438,953,472 bytes, or 137.44GB. Thus, the 8.4GB barrier had been broken, but another barrier remained at 137GB because of the 28-bit LBA addressing used in the ATA interface. The numbers work out as follows:

```
                      Max. Values
---------------------------------
Total Sectors         268,435,456
---------------------------------
Total Bytes       137,438,953,472
Megabytes (MB)            137,439
Mebibytes (MiB)           131,072
Gigabytes (GB)             137.44
Gibibytes (GiB)            128.00
```

By using the new extended INT13h 64-bit LBA mode commands at the BIOS level, as well as the existing 28-bit LBA mode commands at the ATA level, no translation would be required and the LBA numbers would be passed unchanged. The combination of LBA at the BIOS and the ATA interface levels meant that the clumsy CHS addressing could finally die. This also means that when you install an ATA drive larger than 8.4GB in a PC that has an EDD-capable BIOS (1998 or newer), both the BIOS and the drive are automatically set to use LBA mode.

An interesting quirk is that to allow backward compatibility when you boot an older operating system that doesn’t support LBA mode addressing (DOS or the original release of Windows 95, for example), most drives larger than 8.4GB report 16,383 cylinders, 16 heads, and 63 sectors per track, which is 8.4GB. For example, this enables a 120GB drive to be seen as an 8.4GB drive by older BIOSs or operating systems. That sounds strange, but I guess having a 120GB drive being recognized as an 8.4GB is better than not having it work at all. If you did want to install a drive larger than 8.4GB into a system dated before 1998, the recommended solution is either a motherboard BIOS upgrade or an add-on BIOS card with EDD support.

The 137GB Barrier and Beyond

By 2001, the 137GB barrier had become a problem because 3 1/2-inch hard drives were poised to breach that capacity level. The solution came in the form of ATA-6, which was being developed during that year. To enable the addressing of drives of greater capacity, ATA-6 upgraded the LBA functions from using 28-bit numbers to using larger 48-bit numbers.

The ATA-6 specification extends the LBA interface such that it can use 48-bit sector addressing. This means that the maximum capacity is increased to 248 (281,474,976,710,656) total sectors. Because each sector stores 512 bytes, this results in the maximum drive capacity shown here:

```
                           Max. Values
--------------------------------------
Total Sectors      281,474,976,710,656
--------------------------------------
Total Bytes    144,115,188,075,855,872
Megabytes (MB)         144,115,188,076
Mebibytes (MiB)        137,438,953,472
Gigabytes (GB)             144,115,188
Gibibytes (GiB)            134,217,728
Terabytes (TB)                 144,115
Tebibytes (TiB)                131,072
Petabytes (PB)                  144.12
Pebibytes (PiB)                 128.00
```

As you can see, the 48-bit LBA in ATA-6 allows a capacity of just over 144PB (petabytes = quadrillion bytes)!

Because the EDD BIOS functions use a 64-bit LBA number, they have a much larger limit:

```
                                  Max. Values
---------------------------------------------
Total Sectors      18,446,744,073,709,551,616
---------------------------------------------
Total Bytes     9,444,732,965,739,290,427,392
Megabytes (MB)          9,444,732,965,739,290
Mebibytes (MiB)         9,007,199,254,740,992
Gigabytes (GB)              9,444,732,965,739
Gibibytes (GiB)             8,796,093,022,208
Terabytes (TB)                  9,444,732,966
Tebibytes (TiB)                 8,589,934,592
Petabytes (PB)                      9,444,733
Pebibytes (PiB)                     8,388,608
Exabytes (EB)                           9,445
Exbibytes (EiB)                         8,192
Zettabytes (ZB)                          9.44
Zebibytes (ZiB)                          8.00
```

Although the BIOS services use 64-bit LBA (allowing up to 2^{64} sectors) for even greater capacity, the 144 petabyte ATA-6 limitation is the lowest common denominator that would apply. Still, that should hold us for some time to come.

Because hard disk drives have been doubling in capacity every 1.5 to 2 years (a corollary of Moore's Law), I estimate that it will take us until sometime between the years 2031 and 2041 before we reach the 144PB barrier (assuming hard disk technology hasn't been completely replaced by then). Similarly, I estimate that the 9.44ZB EDD BIOS barrier won't be reached until between the years 2055 and 2073! Phoenix originally claimed that the EDD specification would hold us until 2020, but it seems they were being quite conservative.

The 137GB barrier proved a bit more complicated than previous barriers because, in addition to BIOS issues, operating system issues also had to be considered.

Internal ATA drives larger than 137GB require 48-bit LBA (logical block address) support. This support absolutely needs to be provided in the OS, but it can also be provided in the BIOS. It is best if both the OS and BIOS provide this support, but it can be made to work if only the OS has the support.

Having 48-bit LBA support in the OS requires one of the following:

- Windows XP with Service Pack 1 (SP1) or later.
- Windows 2000 with Service Pack 4 (SP4) or later.
- Windows 98/98SE/Me or NT 4.0 with the Intel Application Accelerator (IAA) loaded and a motherboard with an IAA-supported chipset. See http://downloadcenter.intel.com and search for IAA.

Having 48-bit LBA support in the BIOS requires either of the following:

- A motherboard BIOS with 48-bit LBA support (most of those dated September 2002 or later)
- An ATA host adapter card with onboard BIOS that includes 48-bit LBA support

If your motherboard BIOS does not have the support and an update is not available from your motherboard manufacturer, you may be able to use a card. Promise Technology (www.promise.com) makes several PCI cards with 3Gbps SATA/eSATA interfaces as well as an onboard BIOS that adds 48-bit LBA support.

Note that if you have both BIOS and OS support, you can simply install and use the drive like any other. If you have no BIOS support, but you do have OS support, portions of the drive past 137GB are not recognized or accessible until the OS is loaded. If you are installing the OS to a blank hard drive and booting from an original XP (pre-SP1) CD or earlier, you will only be able to partition up to the first 137GB of the drive at installation time. After installing the OS and then the SP1 (or SP2/SP3) update, you can either partition the remainder of the drive as a second partition in Windows or use a free third-party partitioning program such as Parted Magic to expand the 137GB partition to use the full drive. If you are booting from an XP CD with SP1 or later integrated, Windows will recognize the entire drive during the OS installation and allow partitioning of the entire drive as a single partition greater than 137GB.

Operating System and Other Software Limitations

Note that if you use older software, including utilities, applications, or even operating systems that rely exclusively on CHS parameters, these items will see all drives over 8.4GB as 8.4GB only. You will need not only a newer BIOS, but also newer software designed to handle the direct LBA addressing to work with drives over 8.4GB.

Operating system limitations with respect to drives over 8.4GB are shown in Table 7.23.

Table 7.23 Operating System Limitations

Operating System	Limitations for Hard Drive Size
DOS/Windows 3x	DOS 6.22 or lower can't support drives greater than 8.4GB. DOS 7.0 or higher (included with Windows 95 or later) is required to recognize a drive over 8.4GB.
Windows 9x/Me	Windows 95a (original version) does support the INT13h extensions, which means it does support drives over 8.4GB; however, due to limitations of the FAT16 file system, the maximum individual partition size is limited to 2GB. Windows 95B/OSR2 and later (including Windows 98/Me) support the INT13h extensions, which allow drives over 8.4GB, and they also support FAT32, which allows partition sizes up to the maximum capacity of the drive. However, Windows 95 doesn't support hard drives larger than 32GB because of limitations in its design. Windows 98 requires an update to FDISK to partition drives larger than 64GB.
Windows NT	Windows NT 3.5x does not support drives greater than 8.4GB. Windows NT 4.0 does support drivers greater than 8.4GB; however, when a drive larger than 8.4GB is being used as the primary bootable device, Windows NT will not recognize more than 8.4GB. Microsoft has released Service Pack 4, which corrects this problem.
Windows 2000 and later	All Windows 2000 SP3+, Windows XP SP1+, Windows Vista, Windows 7/8, and later systems support MBR-formatted drives up to 2.19TB by default. 64-bit versions of Windows Vista SP1+ and Windows 7/8 and later support GPT-formatted drives of 2.2TB or larger, up to a maximum of 281TB (256TiB).
Linux	Most versions support MBR-formatted drives up to 2.19TB by default, whereas most current versions support GPT formatted drives of 2.2TB or larger, up to 16TiB or 1EiB depending on the file system.
OS/2 Warp	Some versions of OS/2 are limited to a boot partition size of 3.1GB or 4.3GB. IBM has a Device Driver Pack upgrade that enables the boot partition to be as large as 8.4GB. The HPFS file system in OS/2 supports drives up to 64GB.
Novell	NetWare 5.0 and later support drives greater than 8.4GB.

In the case of operating systems that support drives over 8.4GB, the maximum drive size limitations depend on the BIOS and hard drive interface standard, not the OS. Instead, other limitations come into play for the volumes (partitions) and files that can be created and managed by the various operating systems. These limitations depend on not only the operating system involved, but also the file system that is used for the volume. Table 7.24 shows the minimum and maximum volume (partition) size and file size limitations of the various Windows operating systems. As noted in the previous section, the original version of XP, as well as Windows 2000/NT or Windows 95/98/Me, does not currently provide native support for ATA hard drives that are larger than 137GB. You need to use Windows 7/8, Vista, or XP with Service Pack 1 or later installed to use an ATA drive over 137GB. This does not affect drives attached via USB, FireWire, SCSI, or other interfaces.

Table 7.24 Operating System Volume/File Size Limitations by File System

OS Limitations by File System	FAT16	FAT32	NTFS
Min. volume size (9x/Me)	2.092MB	33.554MB	—
Max. volume size (95)	2.147GB	33.554MB	—
Max. volume size (98)	2.147GB	136.902GB	—

Table 7.24 Continued

OS Limitations by File System	FAT16	FAT32	NTFS
Max. volume size (Me)	2.147GB	8.796TB	—
Min. volume size (NT+)	2.092MB	33.554MB	1.000MB
Max. volume size (NT+)	4.294GB	8.796GB	281.475TB
Max. file size (all)	4.294GB	4.294GB	16.384TB

— = not applicable

NT+ = Windows NT, 2000, XP, Vista, and Windows 7/8

MB = megabyte = 1,000,000 bytes

GB = gigabyte = 1,000,000,000 bytes

TB = terabyte = 1,000,000,000,000 bytes

GPT and the 2.2TB Barrier

Although most of the previous barriers in disk capacity have been hardware related, the 2.2TB barrier is more of a software than a hardware problem. Even more specifically, it is a disk formatting and OS problem, and it's a BIOS problem if you consider boot drives versus data drives.

This problem stems from the way hard disks have been formatted since DOS 2.0 and the first PC hard drives appeared in 1983. Back then IBM and Microsoft came up with a scheme for partitioning drives called the *MBR* (Master Boot Record). The MBR is the first sector on a disk, and it is internally defined with the ability to control four primary partitions. Each partition is described by a 16-byte table entry, with 4-byte (32-bit) fields that define the LBA (Logical Block Address) for both where the partition starts and how big it is.

The largest number that can be written using 32 binary digits is 2^{32}, which is equal to 4,294,967,296. Because each sector is normally limited to 512 bytes, this means that the maximum amount of a drive that can be recognized is 2.2TB. Combine the MBR limitation with the fact that most PC BIOSs can only boot from MBR-formatted drives, and most older operating systems only support MBR-formatted drives for both boot drives and data drives, and you can see that the 2.2TB limitation can be a problem.

Several changes are necessary to break this barrier. The first is to develop a new partitioning scheme without the limitations the MBR imposes. This replacement is called GPT, which stands for GUID (globally unique identifier) Partition Table. Intel initially developed the GPT as part of its EFI (Extensible Firmware Interface) specification in 2000; since then Microsoft and other OS vendors have been incorporating it into operating systems. The GPT uses 64-bit LBA numbers, meaning disks of up to 9.4ZB (8ZiB) can be managed. That's equal to 9.4 *billion* terabytes, a limit that won't be reached any time soon.

Figure 7.19 illustrates the differences between MBR and GPT partitions.

Although GPT breaks the 2.2TB barrier from a drive formatting perspective, other elements must be in place for GPT to be usable in a PC. To format or recognize a GPT-formatted disk, you need an OS that supports GPT. That alone allows you to use GPT-formatted disks as secondary (data) disks, but to boot from a GPT-formatted drive, you also need a motherboard with a UEFI BIOS or UEFI Boot option. Table 7.25 summarizes the requirements to break the 2.2TB barrier.

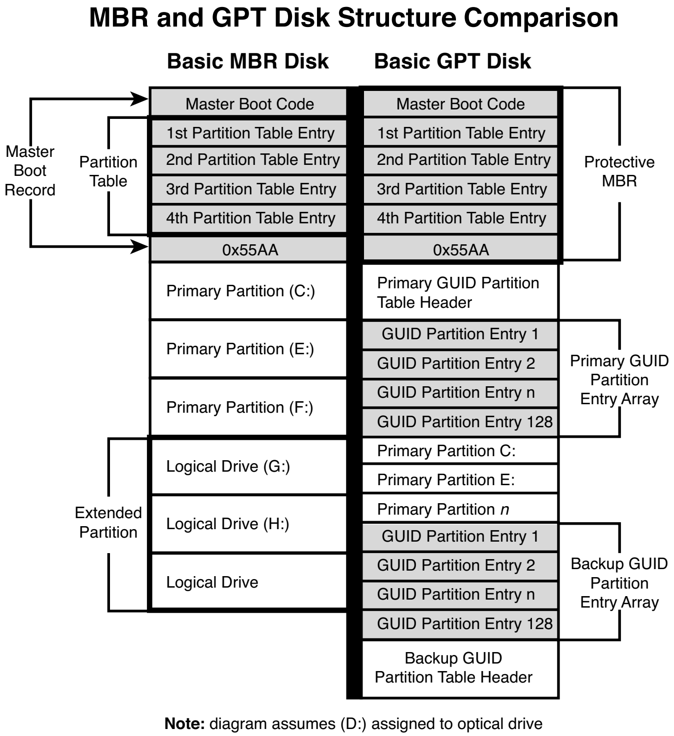


FIGURE 7.19 GPT includes a backup for partition entries and the partition table header.

Table 7.25 Operating System GPT Boot/Data Disk Support

Operating System	GPT Boot Disk	GPT Data Disk
Windows XP (x86)	No	No[1]
Windows XP (x64)	No	Yes
Windows Vista SP1+ (x86)	No	Yes
Windows Vista SP1+ (x64)	Yes[2]	Yes
Windows 7/8 (x86)	No	Yes
Windows 7/8 (x64)	Yes[2]	Yes
Linux UBUNTU 8.04+/SUSE (x86, x64)	Yes	Yes

Note: x86 = 32-bit, x64 = 64-bit

1 Yes with third-party software such as the Paragon GPT Loader

2 Only on systems with a UEFI BIOS or an enabled UEFI Boot option

Drives 2.2TB or larger can also be supported externally via USB without having to resort to GPT partitioning. This is accomplished within the USB Bridge chipset firmware, which can be designed to present 2.2TB or larger drives using 4K sectors instead of the normal 512-byte sectors. USB enclosures or drive docks with this feature can use standard MBR formatting to allow the drive to be supported in Windows XP with no special software required.

In summary, to use a 2.2TB or larger drive as an internal secondary/data drive, you need to format it using GPT, and you need to run a GPT-aware OS (Vista SP1 or later). Booting from such a drive also requires a UEFI BIOS or an enabled UEFI Boot option. You can use GPT-formatted secondary/data drives with Windows XP by installing third-party GPT support software such as the Paragon GPT Loader (www.Paragon-Software.com).

PATA/SATA RAID

RAID is an acronym for redundant array of independent (or inexpensive) disks and was designed to improve the fault tolerance and performance of computer storage systems. RAID was developed at the University of California at Berkeley in 1987 and was designed so that a group of smaller, less expensive drives could be interconnected with special hardware and software to make them appear as a single larger drive to the system. By using multiple drives to act as one drive, increases in fault tolerance and performance could be realized.

Initially, RAID was conceived to simply enable all the individual drives in the array to work together as a single, larger drive with the combined storage space of all the individual drives, which is called a *JBOD* (Just a Bunch of Disks) configuration. Unfortunately, if you had four drives connected in a JBOD array acting as one drive, you would be four times more likely to experience a drive failure than if you used just a single larger drive. And because JBOD does not use striping, performance would be no better than a single drive either. To improve both reliability and performance, the Berkeley scientists proposed six levels (corresponding to different methods) of RAID. These levels provide varying emphasis on fault tolerance (reliability), storage capacity, performance, or a combination of the three.

Although it no longer exists, an organization called the RAID Advisory Board (RAB) was formed in July 1992 to standardize, classify, and educate on the subject of RAID. The RAB developed specifications for RAID, a conformance program for the various RAID levels, and a classification program for RAID hardware.

The RAID Advisory Board defined seven standard RAID levels, called RAID 0–6. Most RAID controllers also implement a RAID 0+1 combination, which is usually called RAID 10. The levels are as follows:

- **RAID Level 0**—Striping-File data is written simultaneously to multiple drives in the array, which act as a single larger drive. This offers high read/write performance but low reliability. Requires a minimum of two drives to implement.
- **RAID Level 1**—Mirroring-Data written to one drive is duplicated on another, providing excellent fault tolerance (if one drive fails, the other is used and no is data lost) but no real increase in performance as compared to a single drive. Requires a minimum of two drives to implement (same capacity as one drive).
- **RAID Level 2**—Bit-level ECC-Data is split one bit at a time across multiple drives, and error correction codes (ECCs) are written to other drives. This is intended for storage devices that do not incorporate ECC internally. (All SCSI and ATA drives have internal ECC.) It's a standard that theoretically provides high data rates with good fault tolerance, but seven or more drives are required for greater than 50% efficiency, and no commercial RAID 2 controllers or drives without ECC are available.
- **RAID Level 3**—Striped with parity-Combines RAID Level 0 striping with an additional drive used for parity information. This RAID level is really an adaptation of RAID Level 0 that sacrifices some capacity, for the same number of drives. However, it also achieves a high level of data integrity or fault tolerance because data usually can be rebuilt if one drive fails. Requires a minimum of three drives to implement (two or more for data and one for parity).

- **RAID Level 4**—Blocked data with parity—Similar to RAID 3 except data is written in larger blocks to the independent drives, offering faster read performance with larger files. Requires a minimum of three drives to implement (two or more for data and one for parity).
- **RAID Level 5**—Blocked data with distributed parity—Similar to RAID 4 but offers improved performance by distributing the parity stripes over a series of hard drives. Requires a minimum of three drives to implement (two or more for data and one for parity).
- **RAID Level 6**—Blocked data with double distributed parity—Similar to RAID 5 except parity information is written twice using two parity schemes to provide even better fault tolerance in case of multiple drive failures. Requires a minimum of four drives to implement (two or more for data and two for parity).

There are also *nested* RAID levels created by combining several forms of RAID. The most common are as follows:

- **RAID Level 01: Mirrored stripes**—Drives are first combined in striped RAID 0 sets; then the RAID 0 sets are mirrored in a RAID 1 configuration. A minimum of four drives is required, and the total number of drives must be an even number. Most PC implementations allow four drives only. The total usable storage capacity is equal to half of the number of drives in the array times the size of the lowest capacity drive. RAID 01 arrays can tolerate a single drive failure and some (but not all) combinations of multiple drive failures. This is not generally recommended because RAID 10 offers more redundancy and performance.
- **RAID Level 10: Striped mirrors**—Drives are first combined in mirrored RAID 1 sets; then the RAID 1 sets are striped in a RAID 0 configuration. A minimum of four drives is required, and the total number of drives must be an even number. Most PC implementations allow four drives only. The total usable storage capacity is equal to half of the number of drives in the array times the size of the lowest capacity drive. RAID 10 arrays can tolerate a single drive failure and many (but not all) combinations of multiple drive failures. This is similar to RAID 01, except with somewhat increased reliability because more combinations of multiple drive failures can be tolerated, and rebuilding an array after a failed drive is replaced is much faster and more efficient.

Additional custom or proprietary RAID levels exist that were not originally supported by the RAID Advisory Board. For example, from 1993 through 2004, “RAID 7” was a trademarked marketing term used to describe a proprietary RAID implementation released by the (now defunct) Storage Computer Corp.

When set up for maximum performance, arrays typically run RAID Level 0, which incorporates data striping. Unfortunately, RAID 0 also sacrifices reliability such that if any one drive fails, all data in the array is lost. The advantage is in extreme performance. With RAID 0, performance generally scales up with the number of drives you add in the array. For example, with four drives you won’t necessarily have four times the performance of a single drive, but many controllers can come close to that for sustained transfers. Some overhead is still involved in the controller performing the striping, and issues still exist with latency—that is, how long it takes to find the data—but performance will be higher than any single drive can normally achieve.

When set up for reliability, arrays generally run RAID Level 1, which is simple drive mirroring. All data written to one drive is written to the other. If one drive fails, the system can continue to work on the other drive. Unfortunately, this does not increase performance, and it also means you get to use only half of the available drive capacity. In other words, you must install two drives, but you get to use only one. (The other is the mirror.) However, in an era of high capacities and low drive prices, this is not a significant issue.

Combining performance with fault tolerance requires using one of the other RAID levels, such as RAID 5 or 10. For example, virtually all professional RAID controllers used in network file servers are designed to use RAID Level 5. Controllers that implement RAID Level 5 used to be very expensive, and RAID 5 requires at least three drives to be connected, whereas RAID 10 requires four drives.

With four 500GB drives in a RAID 5 configuration, you would have 1.5TB of total storage, and you could withstand the failure of any single drive. After a drive failure, data could still be read from and written to the array. However, read/write performance would be exceptionally slow, and it would remain so until the drive was replaced and the array was rebuilt. The rebuild process could take a relatively long time, so if another drive failed before the rebuild completed, all data would be lost.

With four drives in a RAID 10 configuration, you would have only 1TB of total storage. However, you could withstand many cases of multiple drive failures. In addition, after a drive failure, data could still be read from and written to the array at full speed, with no noticeable loss in performance. In addition, once the failed drive is replaced, the rebuild process would go relatively quickly as compared to rebuilding a RAID 5 array. Because of the advantages of RAID 10, many are recommending it as an alternative to RAID 5 where maximum redundancy and performance are required.

Many motherboards include SATA RAID capability as a built-in feature. For those that don't, or where a higher performance or more capable SATA RAID solution is desired, you can install a SATA RAID host adapter in a PCIe slot in the system. A typical PCIe SATA RAID controller enables up to four, six, or eight drives to be attached, and you can run them in RAID Level 0, 1, 5, or 10 mode. Most PCIe SATA RAID cards use a separate SATA data channel (cable) for each drive, allowing maximum performance. Motherboard-based RAID controllers almost exclusively use SATA drives.

If you are considering a SATA RAID controller (or a motherboard with an integrated SATA RAID controller), here are some things to look for:

- RAID levels supported. (Most support 0, 1, 5, and 10. A lack of RAID 5/6 or RAID 10 support indicates a very low-end product.)
- Support for four, six, or eight drives.
- Support for 6Gbps SATA transfer rates.
- PCIe card with onboard controller (provides best performance and future compatibility; note that low-cost PCIe cards are host-based and rely on the CPU).

Software RAID

Some operating systems include software-based RAID capability; in fact, limited RAID 0, 1, and even RAID 5 functionality has been built in to some versions of Windows since Windows 2000. When Microsoft released Windows Home Server in 2007 it greatly enhanced this capability with a feature called Drive Extender, which allowed for the creation and arbitrary expansion of an array using virtually any type of drive (SATA, PATA, USB, FireWire, etc.) in any capacity. Drive Extender creates a virtual drive that is a combination of the assigned physical drives. There is limited redundancy in that by default each file saved on a Drive Extender volume is automatically stored on two different drives such that if one drive fails it can theoretically be replaced without losing any data. If more than one drive fails, then data will be lost. Unfortunately, problems with Drive Extender caused Microsoft to remove the feature from Windows Home Server 2011.

Microsoft has included a newer and better replacement for Drive Extender in Windows 8, which is now called Storage Spaces. Just like Drive Extender, it allows you to build a virtual drive using an array of drives of just about any type or capacity. One area where Storage Spaces differs from Drive Extender is in the redundancy options. In addition to two-way redundancy where data is saved on two drives, Storage Spaces allows for three-way redundancy, meaning that data will be saved on three drives. This also means that up to two drives can fail in the array without losing data. While the redundancy and reliability has been improved, just as with most software-based RAID, performance falls dramatically as compared to either a physical drive or hardware-based RAID, especially in write performance.

While the Storage Spaces feature in Windows 8 looks like an excellent option for a home server with multiple data drives, just like any other RAID array, it doesn't replace the need for backup, meaning you would need somewhere else to back up all of the data on the Storage Spaces virtual drive.

Normally, if you want both performance and reliability, you should look for hardware-based SATA RAID controllers that support RAID Level 5 or 10, or an external storage device with built-in RAID capability. You can install a PCIe-based RAID controller; however, many motherboards have RAID capability built in via the motherboard chipset. Another option is external storage devices like the Drobo (www.drobo.com), which can create and manage virtual drives using the various physical drives mounted in the enclosure. Because they rely on dedicated management hardware, they can offer better performance and reliability than even some hardware-based RAID setups.

This page intentionally left blank

Index

Symbols

1/2-Baby motherboards, 159
0.85” drive, 466
1” hard drives, 466
1st ATAPI CD-ROM Drive setting (Boot menu), 314
1st Boot Device setting (Boot menu), 314
1st Hard Disk Drive setting (Boot menu), 314
1st Removable Device setting (Boot menu), 314
1.8” hard drives, 466
2nd Boot Device setting (Boot menu), 314
2.1 GB barrier (CHS), 423
2.1 speaker configuration, 700
2.2 TB barrier, 432-434
2/3-Baby motherboards, 159
2.5” ATA drive cables, 1003
2.5” hard drives, 465
3D gaming audio standards, 684-686
3D graphics accelerators, 642
  animation, 645
  antialiasing, 645
  APIs (application programming interfaces), 645
    DirectX, 646-647
    OpenGL, 646
  depth cueing, 644
  dual-GPU scene rendering
    AMD CrossFireX, 648-649
    AMD Eyefinity, 650
    NVIDIA SLI, 648
  flat shading, 642
  Gouraud shading, 643
  history of, 643-644
  image abstractions, 644
  image rendering, 644-645
  MIP mapping, 644
  perspective correction, 644

- primitives, 644
- scan conversion, 645
- shading, 645
- software optimization, 645
- texture mapping, 643-645
- vertices, 644
- visible surface determination, 645

3D Soundback, 684

3DNow! technology, 64

3G mobile broadband, 783

3rd Boot Device setting (Boot menu), 314

3TB drives, troubleshooting, 1032-1033

3x series chipsets (Intel), 205-208

+3.3V power sources, 846

3.5" drive enclosure, 1003

3.5" half-height drives, 465

4G mobile broadband, 783-784

4K sectors (Advanced Format), 473-475

4-pin +12V power connectors (ATX), 882-883

4-pin to 8-pin +12V power connectors (ATX), 884-885

4th Boot Device setting (Boot menu), 314

4.1 speaker configuration, 700

4.2 GB barrier (CHS), 423-425

4x series chipsets (Intel), 206-208

-5V power sources, 847-848

+5V power sources, 846

5-pin DIN keyboard connectors, 751

5.1 Surround sound, 700

5.25" hard drives, 464-465

5x series chipsets (Intel), 208-211

6-pin auxiliary power connectors (ATX), 876-877

6-pin mini-DIN keyboard connectors, 751

6.1 Surround sound, 700

6x series chipsets (Intel), 211-213

7-Zip, 281

7.1 Surround sound, 700

7x series chipsets (Intel), 213-215

8-bit (bidirectional) parallel ports, 737

8-bit ISA (Industry Standard Architecture) buses, 255

8-bit processors, 89-90

8P8C connectors, 816

8-pin +12V power connectors (ATX), 883-884

8.4 GB barrier, 427-428

9-pin serial port connectors, 732

9-pin-to-25-pin serial port connectors, 733

10BASE-T, 806

10GBASE-T, 807

-12V power sources, 847-848

+12V power sources, 846

14.31818Mhz crystals, 136

16-bit ISA (Industry Standard Architecture) buses, 256

16-bit processors, 89-90

16-bit to 64-bit processor architecture evolution, 34-35

20-pin main power connectors (ATX), 872-874

25-pin parallel port connectors, 734-735

25-pin serial port connectors, 732

30-pin SIMMs (single inline memory modules), 347

32-bit processors
- 386, 91-92
- 486, 92-93
- Intel-compatible, 96
- Pentium, 93-96
  - BTB (branch target buffer), 95
  - instruction processing, 95
  - math coprocessor, 95
  - specifications, 94
  - superscalar technology, 94
  - twin data pipelines, 94

50-pin PATA (Parallel ATA) connectors, 389-390

56Kbps modems, 791
- chipsets, 792
- limitations, 792
- Modem-on-Hold feature, 793-794
- PCM Upstream feature, 794
- speed, 792
- V.90 standard, 793
- V.92 standard, 793-794

64-bit extension mode, 46-48

64-bit processors
- AMD Athlon 64, 120-124
- AMD Athlon 64 FX, 120-124
- Celeron, 96, 100-101
- Pentium II, 96-99
- Pentium III, 96, 99-100
- Pentium Pro, 96-97

72-pin SIMMs (single inline memory modules), 347

80 PLUS Program, 903-904

086 processors, 89

96x series chipsets (Intel), 204-205

100BASE-TX, 806

101-key keyboards, 739-740

103/104-key keyboards, 740-742

137 GB barrier, 429-430

168-pin SDRAM DIMMs, 348

184-pin DDR DIMMs, 348, 353

240-pin DDR2 DIMMs, 348, 353

240-pin DDR3 DIMMs, 349, 353

286 processors, 90

305 RAMAC (Random Access Method of Accounting and Control), 439
386 processors, 91-92, 190
480x chipsets (AMD), 220
486 processors, 92-93
  82350 chipsets, 190
  Intel chipsets, 190
  sockets, 75-76
500 series chipsets (AMD), 220
504 MiB barrier (CHS), 421
512-byte sector on modern drive, 472
528 MB barrier (CHS), 419-421
555.2 Harmonics standard (IEC), 899
586 processors. *See* Pentium processors
686 processors
  Celeron, 100-101
  Pentium-compatible, 64
  Pentium II, 64-65, 96-99
  Pentium III, 99-100
  Pentium Pro, 64-65, 96-97
690 series chipsets (AMD), 221
700 series chipsets (AMD), 221-222
726 Tape Unit, 439
800 series chipsets (AMD), 222
802.11a Wi-Fi standard, 810
802.11ac Wi-Fi standard, 812
802.11b Wi-Fi standard, 808-810
802.11g Wi-Fi standard, 810-811
802.11n Wi-Fi standard, 811-812
900 series chipsets (AMD), 223-225
915 family chipsets (Intel), 202-203
925X family chipsets (Intel), 203
945 Express family chipsets (Intel), 203
955X chipsets (Intel), 204
975X chipsets (Intel), 204
1000-3-2 Harmonics standard (IEC), 899
1000-3-3 Flicker standard (IEC), 899
1394 standard (IEEE), 718
1394a standard (IEEE), 718-719
1394b S3200 standard (IEEE), 721
1394b standard (IEEE), 719-720
4004 processor, 30
6502 processors, 32
8000 (8151) chipsets (AMD), 219
8008 processor, 31
8085 processors, 31
8086 mode, 44-45
8086 processors, 32, 89
8088 processors, 32, 89-90
8151 chipsets (AMD), 219
9100A electronic calculator (Hewlett-Packard), 20
80286 processors, 90
80386 processors, 91-92, 190
80486 processors, 92-93
  82350 chipsets, 190
  Intel chipsets, 190
  sockets, 75-76
80586 processors. *See* Pentium processors
80686 processors
  Celeron, 100-101
  Pentium-compatible, 64
  Pentium II, 64-65, 96-99
  Pentium III, 99-100
  Pentium Pro, 64-65, 96-97
82C206 chips, 182
82C836 SCAT (Single Chip AT) chipsets, 182
82350 chipsets (Intel), 190

A

ABC (Atanasoff-Berry Computer), 5, 10
absolute time in pre-groove (ATIP), 540
AC power switches
  front panel, 868-869
  integral, 868
AC ripple, 898
AC'97 integrated audio, 694
Accelerated Graphics Port (AGP), 253, 625-626
accelerated hub architecture (AHA), 188
accessing BIOS Setup, 292
Access Mode setting (Drive Configuration menu), 302
access points, 831, 836, 842
access times
  CD drives, 598
  DVD drives, 598
  HDDs (hard disk drives), 503
acclimating to temperatures (HDDs), 495
ACM (Adaptive Contrast Management), 660
ACPI (Advanced Configuration and Power Interface), 318-319, 905-908
ACPI suspend mode, 312, 910
Acronis True Image, 506
active heatsinks, 143-145
active low signals, 866
Active Management Technology (AMT) BIOS Setup, 306
active-matrix LCD (liquid crystal display) monitors, 661-662
active PFC (power factor correction), 899
active preventative maintenance
  cleaning, 1012
    chemical-freeze sprays, 1014
    compressed air, 1014

        connectors, 1015-1016
        contact cleaners/lubricants, 1013
        contacts, 1015-1016
        disassembly and cleaning tools, 1013
        keyboards, 1016
        mouse devices, 1016
        swabs, 1015
        system disassembly, 1015
        vacuum cleaners, 1014
    weekly and monthly checklists, 1011-1012
actuator mechanisms (heads), 467
    servo mechanisms, 489-493
        dedicated servo, 492-493
        disk sweep, 491
        embedded servo, 492
        gray code, 490
        servowriters, 490
        thermal recalibration, 490
        wedge servo, 491-492
    stepper motors, 487-488
    voice-coil actuators, 488-489
Adalin, 684
adapters. *See also* 3D graphics accelerators, 642
    2 ½" ATA drive cables and adapters, 1003
    audio adapters. *See* sound cards
    data transfer cables and adapters, 1003
    DWA (Device Wire Adapter), 717
    expansion cards, 969
    host interface adapters. *See* ATA (AT Attachment); SCSI (small computer system interface)
    HWA (Host Wire Adapter), 717
    integrated adapters, 938
    network interface adapters, 989
    NICs (network interface cards)
        bus types, 815
        connectors, 815-816
        costs, 814
        full-duplex, 815
        half-duplex, 815
        installation, 840-841
        speed, 815
        testing, 841
        wireless NICs, 832
    PCI (Peripheral Connect Interface) buses, 249
    PS/2 Y adapter, 1003
    troubleshooting, 1025, 1034
    USB/FireWire cable adapter, 1003
    video adapters
        chipsets, 619-620
        choosing, 940
        components, 617-618
        DAC (digital-to-analog converter), 624
        definition of, 610
        dual-head graphics adapters, 667
        explained, 610
        heterogeneous adapters, 668
        homogeneous adapters, 668
        installation, 967-968
        integrated video/motherboard chipsets, 611-616
        processors with integrated video, 616-617
        removing, 968
        testing, 671
        troubleshooting, 670-671
        types of, 610-611
        UMA (unified memory architecture), 611
        VGA adapters, 667
        video BIOS, 618
        video drivers, 672
        video RAM, 620-624
Adaptive Contrast Management (ACM), 660
Adaptive Differential Pulse Code Modulation (ADPCM), 692
ADCs (analog-to-digital converters), 681
Additional System Information setting (BIOS main menu), 295
AddOn ROM Display Mode setting (Boot menu), 314
address buses, 42-44
Address Mark sector field, 470
address storing (switches), 828
addresses
    CMOS RAM addresses, 285-287
    MAC addresses, 814
    port addresses, 259-260
addressing sectors
    CHS (cylinder head sector)
        2.1 GB barrier, 423
        4.2 GB barrier, 423-425
        8.4 GB barrier, 427-428
        528 MB barrier, 419-421
        BIOS commands versus ATA commands, 418-419
        CHS bit-shift translation, 421-423
        CHS/LBA conversions, 417-418
    LBA (logical block address)
        137 GB barrier and beyond, 429-430
        BIOS commands versus ATA commands, 418-419
        CHS/LBA conversions, 417-418
        compared to CHS (cylinder head sector), 416-417
        LBA-assist translation, 425-427

- prefixes for decimal/binary multiples, 414-415

Adesso mechanical-switch keyboards, 743

ad hoc mode, 831

adjusting monitors, 674-675

AdLib sound card, 682

ADPCM (Adaptive Differential Pulse Code Modulation), 692

ADSL (Asymmetric DSL), 781

Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI), 318-319, 905-908

Advanced Format (4K sectors), 473-475

Advanced Host Controller Interface (AHCI), 408-409

advanced Linux sound architecture (ALSA), 693

Advanced menus (BIOS Setup)
- Boot Configuration, 298
- Chipset Configuration, 298-300
- Drive Configuration, 302-305
- Event Log Configuration, 306-307
- explained, 295-296
- Fan Control Configuration, 309
- Floppy Configuration, 305-306
- hardware monitoring display, 310
- Memory Configuration, 297-298
- PCI Configuration, 296
- PCI Express Configuration, 296-297
- Peripheral Configuration, 301-302
- USB Configuration, 308-309
- Video Configuration, 307-308

Advanced Optical Disc (AOD), 569-570

Advanced Power Management (APM), 312, 318, 904-905

advanced processing units (APUs), 131-132

Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC), 258

Advanced RLL (ARLL), 452

advanced vector extensions (AVX), 64

Advanced Video Coding High Definition (AVCHD), 511

AFC (antiferromagnetically coupled) media, 485

After Power Failure setting (Power menu), 312

AGC (Automatic Gain Control), 556, 687

AGP (Accelerated Graphics Port), 253, 625-626

AGP/PCI Burn-in Mode setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 299

AHA (accelerated hub architecture), 188

AHCI (Advanced Host Controller Interface), 408-409

air bearing heads, 469

air filters, 494-495

Alderwood (925X) chipsets, 203

algorithms, ADPCM (Adaptive Differential Pulse Code Modulation), 692

ALi Corporation. *See* ULi Electronics chipsets

A-Link architecture, 190

Allied Electronics, 1000

allocation units, 480

alpha particles, 358

Alps Electric mechanical keyswitches, 743

ALSA (advanced Linux sound architecture), 693

Altair, 19
- 8800 kit, 14

aluminum foil, 945

aluminum in hard disks, 441

aluminum/magnesium alloy platters, 484

AMD
- chipsets, 217
  - AMD 690 series chipsets, 221
  - AMD 700 series chipsets, 221-222
  - AMD 800 series chipsets, 222
  - AMD 900 series chipsets, 223-225
  - AMD 8000 (8151), 219
  - AMD A series chipsets, 225
  - AMD (ATI) 480x and 500 series chipsets, 220
  - reference table, 217-218
- Clock program, 138
- CPU Info program, 138
- CrossFire, 893
- CrossFireX, 648-649
- Eyefinity, 650
- Fusion/HSA (Heterogeneous Systems Architecture) APUs, 131-132
- processors
  - Athlon, 117-118
  - Athlon 64, 120-124
  - Athlon 64 FX, 120-126
  - Athlon 64 X2, 125-126
  - Athlon MP, 120
  - Athlon XP, 118-119
  - Bulldozer FX, 128-131
  - code names, 88-89
  - development of, 33-34
  - Duron, 118, 185
  - K5, 96
  - K6, 64, 116-117
  - K10, 126-128
  - Piledriver FX, 128-131
  - Sempron, 124
  - specifications, 40

AMD-V, 69

American Megatrends, Inc. *See* AMI (American Megatrends, Inc.) BIOS

American Power Conversion (APC), 925

AMI (American Megatrends, Inc.) BIOS, 273
- BIOS error messages, 322
- POST error codes, 978-979

AMIDiag Suite, 990

amorphous state, 544

amplification, 698

amplitude, 680

AMR (anisotropic magneto-resistant) heads, 445-446

AMR (Audio Modem Riser), 240

AMT (Active Management Technology) BIOS Setup, 306

analog RCA sound card connectors, 689

analog-to-digital converters (ADCs), 681

Analytical Engine, 5

Andromeda Research Labs, 271

animation, 645

anisotropic magneto-resistant (AMR) heads, 445-446

antennas, 832

antialiasing, 645

antiferromagnetically coupled (AFC) media, 485

AOD (Advanced Optical Disc), 569-570

APC (American Power Conversion), 925

aperture, numerical, 568

Aperture Size setting (Video Configuration menu), 307

APIC (Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller), 258

a-pinene, 1013

APIs (application programming interfaces), 645
- definition of, 265
- DirectX, 646-647
- OpenGL, 646

APM (Advanced Power Management), 312, 318, 904-905

Apple
- Apple I, 15
- Apple II, 15
- Mac OS X, 23
- proprietary design, 17
- shift to PC-based architecture, 18

application programming interfaces. *See* APIs

APUs (advanced processing units), 131-132

architecture, layered system architecture, 265-266

areal density, 456-458

ARLL (Advanced RLL), 452

ARPAnet, 6

ASCR (ASUS Smart Contrast Ratio), 660

A series chipsets (AMD), 225

ASF Support setting (Boot Configuration menu), 298

a-Si (hydrogenated amorphour silicon), 661

ASIO4ALL project, 693

aspect ratio, 652-653

assembling systems. *See* system assembly

ASUS Disk Unlocker, 292

ASUS Smart Contrast Ratio (ASCR), 660

Asymmetric DSL (ADSL), 781

asynchronous, 730

AT Attachment. *See* ATA

AT motherboards
- Baby-AT, 158-159
- full-size AT, 157-158
- power supply connectors, 870-872

ATA (AT Attachment)
- ATA-1 standard, 382
- ATA-2 standard, 382
- ATA-3 standard, 383
- ATA/ATAPI-4 standard, 383-384
- ATA/ATAPI-5 standard, 384-385
- ATA/ATAPI-6 standard, 385
- ATA/ATAPI-7 standard, 386
- ATA/ATAPI-8 standard, 386
- ATAPI (AT Attachment Packet Interface), 413
- busmaster ATA, 396
- CAM ATA (Common Access Method ATA), 379
- capacity limitations, 498
- CHS (cylinder head sector) addressing, 419-421
- commands, 410-411
- connectors, 385
- drive capacity limitations, 413-414
  - 2.1 GB barrier, 423
  - 2.2 TB barrier, 432-434
  - 4.2 GB barrier, 423-425
  - 8.4 GB barrier, 427-428
  - 137 GB barrier and beyond, 429-430
  - BIOS limitations, 415-416
  - BIOS versus ATA commands, 418-419
  - CHS bit-shift translation, 421-423
  - CHS/LBA conversions, 417-418
  - CHS limitations, 419-421
  - CHS versus LBA, 416-417
  - LBA-assist translation, 425-427
  - table of, 414
- endecs, 378
- explained, 377

GPT (GUID Partition Table), 432-434
history of, 378-380
HPAs (host protected areas), 412-413
operating system limitations, 430-432
PATA (Parallel ATA), 380
  DMA (direct memory access) transfer modes, 396-397
  dual-drive configurations, 393-395
  I/O cables, 390-392
  I/O connectors, 387-390
  PIO (Programmed I/O) transfer modes, 396
  signals, 392-393
precursors to, 377-378
RAID (redundant array of independent disks), 434-435
  levels, 434-436
  software RAID, 436-437
reliability, 378
SATA (Serial ATA)
  AHCI (Advanced Host Controller Interface), 408-409
  backward compatibility, 398
  BIOS setup, 407
  cables and connectors, 401-403
  eSATA (external SATA), 404-405
  eSATAp (Power Over eSATA), 405-407
  explained, 398
  mSATA (mini-SATA), 403-404
  NVMe (Non-Volatile Memory Express), 409
  power connectors, 889
  SATA Express, 399-401
  Serial ATA International Organization, 380, 399
  standards and performance, 398-399
  transfer modes, 399, 409-410
Security Mode, 411-412
standard organizations, 380-381
standard summary, 381
upgrade boards, 274

ATA IDENTIFY DEVICE command, 514

ATA/IDE Configuration setting (Drive Configuration menu), 303

Atanasoff-Berry Computer (ABC), 5, 10

Atanasoff, John V., 5, 10

ATAPI (AT Attachment Packet Interface), 413

Athlon chipsets
  nForce/nForce2, 227
  reference table, 217-218
  SiS, 227

Athlon II (K10) processors, 126-128

Athlon 64 processors
  chipsets
    AMD 690 series, 221
    AMD 700 series, 221-222
    AMD 800 series, 222
    AMD 900 series, 223-225
    AMD 8000 (8151), 219
    AMD A series, 225
    AMD (ATI) 480x and 500 series, 220
  overview, 120-124

Athlon 64 FX processors, 120-126

Athlon 64 X2 processors, 125-126

Athlon MP processors, 120

Athlon X2 (K10) processors, 126-128

Athlon XP processors, 118-119

ATI
  chipsets, 190, 216
  Hybrid CrossFire, 940

ATIP (absolute time in pregroove), 540

Atom processors (Intel), 115

AT power supply connectors, 870-872

AT&T, 795

attachment unit interface (AUI), 816

AT&T U-verse, 838

ATX12V 2.x 24-pin power supply connectors, 877-879

ATX12V power supply, 852-854

ATX/ATX12V 1.x power supply connectors, 872
  6-pin auxiliary power connectors, 876-877
  20-pin main power connectors, 872-874
  maximum power-handling capabilities, 875-876
  Molex Mini-Fit Jr. power connectors, 874-875

ATX motherboards, 167-168
  color coding, 172
  extended ATX, 172
  FlexATX, 174-175
  identifying, 169
  microATX, 172-174
  Mini-ATX, 169
  ports, 170
  power supply connectors, 852-854, 872
    4-pin +12V power connectors, 882-883
    4-pin to 8-pin +12V power connectors, 884-885
    6-pin auxiliary power connectors, 876-877

    - 8-pin +12V power connectors, 883-884
    - 20-pin main power connectors, 872-874
    - ATX12V 2.x 24-pin, 877-879
    - backward/forward compatibility, 885-886
    - Dell proprietary ATX design, 887
    - maximum power-handling capabilities, 875-876
    - Molex Mini-Fit Jr. power connectors, 874-875
    - PCG (Platform Compatibility Guide), 881
    - VRM (voltage regulator module), 879-880
  - specification, 172

Audacity, 682-693

audio
  - amplitude, 680
  - CDs. *See* CDs
  - explained, 679-680
  - frequency response, 680
  - front panel audio connector pinout, 236
  - headphones, 699
  - integrated audio chipsets, 694
  - microphones, 700-701
  - Microsoft Windows audio support, 682
    - 3D gaming standards, 684-685
    - core audio APIs, 683-684
    - DirectX, 683
    - legacy audio support, 685-686
  - optimizing system for, 932
  - pitch, 680
  - POST audio error codes, 977
  - POST beep codes
    - AMI BIOS, 978-979
    - Award BIOS/Phoenix FirstBIOS, 979
    - IBM BIOS, 984
    - IBM/Lenovo, 987-989
    - Phoenix BIOS 4 and later, 983-984
    - Phoenix BIOS 486 and earlier, 981-983
  - sampling, 534, 681-682
  - SNR (signal-to-noise ratio), 681
  - sound cards
    - AdLib, 682
    - choosing, 940
    - connectors, 686-689
    - data compression, 692-693
    - drivers, 693
    - history of, 682
    - integrated audio chipsets, 694
    - MIDI support features, 691
    - monophonic/stereophonic, 691
    - signal processing methods, 688
    - Sound Blaster, 682
    - Sound Blaster Pro, 682
    - sound production features, 693
    - troubleshooting, 694
    - USB-based audio processors, 689-690
    - volume control, 690-691
  - speakers
    - amplification, 698
    - DBB (dynamic bass boost), 699
    - explained, 698
    - frequency response, 698
    - interference, 699
    - satellite speakers, 699
    - sleep feature, 699
    - surround sound, 699-700
    - total harmonic distortion, 698
    - volume control, 699
    - watts, 698
  - total harmonic distortion, 680
  - troubleshooting, 1027
    - advanced features, 697
    - with Device Manager, 698
    - low volume, 695-696
    - no sound, 695
    - problems playing specific file formats, 696
    - scratchy sound, 697
    - speakers, 696
    - startup problems, 697

audio data information
  - CDs, 533
  - DVDs, 553-554

audio endpoint devices, 683

Audio Interface Wizard, 693

Audio Modem Riser (AMR), 240

AUI (attachment unit interface), 816

AUTOEXEC.BAT file, 997

automated bootable media images, upgrading flash ROM from, 280

automatic drive detection, 966

Automatic Fan Detection setting (Fan Control Configuration menu), 309

Automatic Gain Control (AGC), 556, 687

automatic head parking, 493-494

auto-sensing, 687

auxiliary power connectors (ATX), 876-877

Auxiliary Power setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 301

aux in sound card connectors, 688

Avant Prime mechanical-switch keyboards, 743

AVCHD (Advanced Video Coding High Definition), 511

average access times of HDDs (hard disk drives), 503

average seek times, 502

AVX (advanced vector extensions), 64

Award BIOS error messages, 322
- POST error codes, 979
- POST onscreen messages, 980-981

Azalia HD Audio, 694

azimuth, 488

B

Babbage, Charles, 5

Baby-AT motherboards, 158-159

backing plates, 143

backing up CMOS RAM, 276-277

back probing, 915

backup power supply
- standby power supply, 922-923
- UPS (uninterruptible power supply), 923-925

backups of ROM BIOS, 276

backward compatibility
- DVD drives, 580
- motherboard power connectors, 885-886
- SATA (Serial ATA), 398

bad pixels (LCDs), 675-676

Balanced Technology Extended (BTX) motherboards, 164-167

ball-driven mice, 758-759

bandwidth, 42
- buses, 240-245
- cable bandwidth, 778

banks (memory), 351, 356-357

BAPCo SYSmark, 49

Bardeen, John, 6, 11

Base I/O Address (for the Parallel Port) setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 301

Base I/O Address (for the Serial Port) setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 301

base memory, 295

basic input/output system. *See* BIOS

batteries
- connectors, 237
- lithium coin cell batteries, 1003
- replacing, 928
- RTC/NVRAM
  - modern CMOS batteries, 925-927
  - obsolete/unique CMOS batteries, 927-928
  - troubleshooting, 928

BBUL (bumpless build-up layer), 75

BD (Blu-ray discs), 567-569, 606

BD (Blu-ray disc) drives, 28

BDF (Blu-ray Disc Founders), 567

BD-R, 567

BD-RE, 567

BD-RE XL, 567

BD-ROM, 567

bearings, fluid dynamic bearings, 496

Bearlake (3x series) chipsets, 205-208

BEDO (burst EDO), 337

beep error codes (POST), 977
- AMI BIOS, 978-979
- Award BIOS/Phoenix FirstBIOS, 979
- IBM BIOS, 984
- IBM/Lenovo, 987-989
- Phoenix BIOS
  - Phoenix BIOS 4 and later, 983-984
  - Phoenix BIOS 486 and earlier, 981-983

benchmarks (processor), 49

bench testing power supplies
- digital infrared thermometers, 916
- variable voltage transformers, 917

Berkeley, Edmund C., 19

Berners-Lee, Tim, 8

Berry, Clifford, 10

bidirectional (8-bit) parallel ports, 737

binary digits (bits), 11

binary multiples, prefixes for, 414-415

biometric security, 516

BIOS (basic input/output system)
- backing up, 276
- BIOS dates, 275-276
- boot ROM, 274
- bootstrap loader, 267
- capacity limitations, 498-499
- choosing, 936
- CMOS RAM
  - addresses, 285-287
  - backing up, 276-277
  - configuring with BIOS Setup. *See* Setup program (BIOS)
  - definition of, 266-267
  - diagnostic status byte codes, 287
- definition of, 22, 263
- error messages
  - AMI BIOS messages, 322
  - Award BIOS messages, 322
  - Compaq BIOS messages, 322
  - explained, 319-320
  - IBM BIOS messages, 320-321
  - MBR boot error messages, 322-324
  - Phoenix BIOS messages, 322

explained, 263-266, 936
firmware, 264
flash ROM, upgrading, 277-278
  with automated bootable media images, 280
  BIOS Setup executable upgrades, 279-280
  emergency flash ROM recovery, 282-285
  safety, 282
  with user-created bootable media, 280-281
  Windows executable upgrades, 279
  write protection, 278
hardware/software, 274
IPL (initial program load) ROM, 274
manufacturers, 273-274
motherboard ROM BIOS, 267
  EEPROM (electronically erasable programmable ROM), 272-273
  EPROM (erasable programmable ROM), 271-272
  flash ROM, 272-273
  mask ROM, 270
  PROM (programmable ROM), 270-271
  ROM hardware, 267-268
  ROM shadowing, 269
non-PC ROM upgrades, 272
paragraphs, 268
PnP (Plug and Play), 317
  ACPI (Advanced Configuration and Power Interface), 318-319
  device IDs, 318
POST errors. *See* POST (power on self test)
preboot environment, 287-289
RTC/NVRAM (real-time clock/nonvolatile memory) chips, 266
SATA (Serial ATA) setup, 407
Setup program, 267
  accessing, 292
  additional setup features, 316-317
  Boot Configuration menu, 298
  Boot menu, 314-315
  Chipset Configuration menu, 298-300
  Drive Configuration menu, 302-305
  Event Log Configuration menu, 306-307
  Exit menu, 315-316
  explained, 292-293
  Fan Control Configuration menu, 309
  Floppy Configuration menu, 305-306
  hardware monitoring display, 310
  main menu, 294-295
  Maintenance menu, 293-294
  Memory Configuration menu, 297-298
  PCI Configuration menu, 296
  PCI Express Configuration menu, 296-297
  Peripheral Configuration menu, 301-302
  Power menu, 312-313
  running, 969-971
  Security menu, 311-312
  USB Configuration menu, 308-309
  Video Configuration menu, 307-308
UEFI (Unified Extensible Firmware Interface)
  BIOS limitations, 290-291
  explained, 289-290
  support for, 291-292
upgrading
  advantages of, 274-275
  BIOS versions, 275
  CMOS RAM addresses, 285-287
  CMOS RAM backups, 276-277
  CMOS RAM diagnostic status byte codes, 287
  flash ROM, 277-285
  keyboard controller chips, 277
  obtaining updates, 275
versions, 275

BIOS RAM checksum error – System halted (error message), 980
BIOS Version setting (BIOS main menu), 295
bits (binary digits), 11
  bit cells, 442
  bit-level ECC (error correction codes), 434
  merge bits, 537
bitsetting, 566
bit-shift translation (CHS), 421-423
black power switch connector wires, 869
blanks, 134
BLER (block error rate), 535
Blinkenlights Archaeological Institute, 19
blocked data with distributed parity, 435
blocked data with double distributed parity, 435
block error rate (BLER), 535
Blue Book standard (CD EXTRA), 576-577
blue power switch connector wires, 869
Blue Ripple Sound, 684
Blue Screen Of Death (BSOD) errors, 989

Bluetooth, 772, 813-814, 833
Blu-ray Disc Founders (BDF), 567
Blu-ray discs, 567-569, 592, 606
Board ID setting (BIOS Maintenance menu), 293
bonding, 73
bootable CDs, creating, 601-602, 606
bootable DVDs, creating, 601-602
Boot Configuration menu (BIOS Setup), 298
Boot menu (BIOS Setup), 314-315
bootmgr.exe, 998
boot process
  BIOS boot error messages
    AMI BIOS messages, 322
    Award BIOS messages, 322
    Compaq BIOS messages, 322
    explained, 320
    IBM BIOS messages, 320-321
    Phoenix BIOS messages, 322
  BIOS Setup settings, 314-315
  bootable CDs, 601-602, 606
  boot floppy disks, 601
  booting from CD-ROM, 993
  DOS, 996-997
  explained, 991-992
  MBR boot error messages, 322-323
    Error loading operating system, 323-324
    Invalid partition table, 323
    Missing operating system, 324
  operating system independent, 992-996, 1024-1025
  quiet boots, 275
  troubleshooting, 1024, 1031
  Windows 8, 998-999
  Windows 9x/Me, 997
  Windows 2000/XP, 997-998
  Windows Vista/7, 998
boot ROM (read-only memory), 274
Boot to Network setting (Boot menu), 314
Boot to Optical Devices setting (Boot menu), 314
Boot to Removable Devices setting (Boot menu), 314
Boot Up Floppy Seek feature (BIOS Setup), 317
bootstrap loader, 267
bootstrap troubleshooting approach, 1023-1024
bouncing keystrokes, 747
boutique heatsinks, 146
boxed processors, 934
branch prediction, 64, 95
branch target buffer (BTB), 95
Brattain, Walter, 6, 11
Break codes, 749
bridges, wireless, 832
brightness (monitors), 659-660
broadband technology
  CATV (cable TV)
    cable bandwidth, 778
    cable modems, 776-778
    costs, 779
    explained, 776
  cellular broadband
    3G mobile broadband, 783
    4G mobile broadband, 783-784
  comparison of access types, 789
  DSL (digital subscriber line), 779
    ADSL (Asymmetric DSL), 781
    availability, 780
    CAP (carrierless amplitude/phase), 780
    costs, 782-783
    DMT (discrete multitone), 780
    DSLAM (DSL access multiplexer), 780
    how it works, 779-780
    low-pass filters, 780
    SDSL (Symmetrical DSL), 781
    security, 782
    self-installing, 781-782
    transceivers, 780
    VDSL (Very High-Data-Rate DSL), 781
  explained, 775-776
  ISDN (Integrated Services Digital Network), 787
  leased lines, 788
  satellite broadband
    explained, 784-785
    HughesNet, 785
    performance issues, 786-787
    StarBand, 786
    WildBlue, 785-786
  service interruptions, 795
  speeds, 789
  status LEDs, 797
  wireless broadband, 783
Broadwater (96x) chipsets, 204-205
brown power switch connector wires, 869
BSOD (Blue Screen Of Death) errors, 989
BTB (branch target buffer), 95
BTS DriverPacks, 408
BTX motherboards, 164-167
buckling spring keyboards, 746
buffers
  buffer underruns, 601
  TLB (translation lookaside buffer), 60

bugs. *See also* troubleshooting
  bug checks, 989
  processor bugs, 88
building systems. *See* system assembly
Bulldozer FX processors, 128-131
bumpless build-up layer (BBUL), 75
burning
  CDs, 541, 600-601
  ROM (read-only memory), 270
burn-in testing, 990-991
BURN-Proof technology, 601
burst EDO (BEDO), 337
bus masters, 60
bus snooping, 60
bus topology, 825
buses, 239, 245
  address buses, 42-44
  AGP (Accelerated Graphics Port), 253
  bandwidth, 240-245
  bus masters, 60
  bus snooping, 60
  definition of, 239
  DIB (Dual Independent Bus) architecture, 65
  DMA (direct memory access) channels, 259
  DMI (Direct Media Interface), 240
  EISA (Extended Industry Standard Architecture), 246, 256
  external data buses, 42
  HyperTransport bus, 188
  identifying, 245
  internal data buses, 44
  I/O port addresses, 259-260
  IRQs (interrupt request channels), 254
    8-bit ISA bus interrupts, 255
    16-bit ISA/EISA/MCA bus interrupts, 256-257
    Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller, 258
    conflicts, 259
    edge-triggered interrupt sensing, 255
    interrupt sharing, 255
    maskable interrupts, 255
    PCI interrupts, 257-258
    PCI IRQ Steering, 255
  ISA (Industry Standard Architecture), 245-246, 255-256
  local buses, 246-247
  MCA (microchannel architecture), 246, 256
  NICs (network interface cards), 815
  overclocking, 140
  PCI (Peripheral Connect Interface), 239, 248-251
    adapter cards, 249
    board configurations, 250-251
    bus types, 249
    interrupts, 257
    PCI Express, 239, 251-253
    specifications, 247-248
  S-100 bus, 14
  speeds, 333-335
  USB. *See* USB (Universal Serial Bus)
  VESA (Video Electronics Standards Association), 247
  video memory bus width, 623-624
  widths, 26-27
Busicom, 30
busmaster ATA (AT Attachment), 396
busmaster DMA (direct memory access), 397
buttons (mouse), 758
byte mode (parallel ports), 737

C

C1E setting (BIOS Maintenance menu), 293
cable bandwidth, 778
Cable Detected setting (Drive Configuration menu), 303
cable modems, 776-778
cable select (CSEL) signals, 393
cable select (CS) pins, 393-395
cable TV. *See* CATV (cable TV)
CableLabs Certified cable modems, 776
cables, 816
  cable distance limitations, 824
  cable-ties, 1002
  choosing, 842, 941
  FIC (flex interconnect cable), 448
  grounding loops, 818
  hard drive cables, 497-498
  installation, 961-962, 969
  keyboard cables, 754
  modular cables, 919
  PATA (Parallel ATA) I/O cables, 390-392
  SATA (Serial ATA), 401-403
  testing with DMMs (digital multimeters), 754
  Thicknet, 816-817
  Thinnet, 817
  twisted-pair
    building, 820-824
    Category 3 cable, 818
    Category 5 cable, 819
    Category 6a cable, 819
    Category 6 cable, 819
    crossover cables, 821
    STP (shielded twisted pair), 817-818
    UTP (unshielded twisted pair), 817
    wiring standards, 820-821

cache
  bus snooping, 60
  cache controllers, 60
  definition of, 53, 330
  direct-mapped cache, 59
  explained, 329, 936-937
  fully associative mapped cache, 59
  hard disk drive cache programs, 503-504
  hits/misses, 330
  Level 1, 54, 330
    cache operation, 54-56
    importance of, 54
    Pentium-MMX improvements, 62
  Level 2, 56, 330
  Level 3, 56, 331
  performance and design, 57-59
  set associative cache, 59
  speed, 60
  TLB (translation lookaside buffer), 60
  write-back cache, 370
  write-through cache, 60
cache controllers, 60
caddy load mechanism (CD/DVD drives), 599
Cady, Walter G., 136
calculating
  power consumption, 901-903
  video RAM, 622-623
calculators
  9100A electronic calculator (Hewlett-Packard), 20
  IBM701 Defense Calculator, 439
CAM ATA (Common Access Method ATA), 379
Canadian Standards Agency (CSA) certifications, 900
Cannon Electric, 689
Cannon, James H., 689
cannon plugs, 689
capacitive keyswitches, 746
capacity
  ATA drive capacity limitations, 413-414
    2.1 GB barrier, 423
    2.2 TB barrier, 432-434
    4.2 GB barrier, 423-425
    8.4 GB barrier, 427-428
    137 GB barrier and beyond, 429-430
    BIOS commands versus ATA commands, 418-419
    BIOS limitations, 415-416
    CHS bit-shift translation, 421-423
    CHS/LBA conversions, 417-418
    CHS limitations, 419-421
    CHS versus LBA, 416-417
    GPT (GUID Partition Table), 432-434
    LBA-assist translation, 425-427
    table of, 414
  CD-R discs, 541
  CDs, 526, 536-537
  DVDs, 555-558
  flash memory cards, 518
  HDDs (hard disk drives), 462-463
    BIOS limitations, 498-499
    operating system limitations, 499-500
  magnetic storage, 455-456
CAP (carrierless amplitude/phase), 780
card readers, 520-521
care and maintenance. *See also* troubleshooting
  CD/DVD drives, 600
  CDs/DVDs, 527, 606-607
  cleaning. *See* cleaning
  keyboards, 754-755
  keyswitches, 744
  mice, 765
  monitors, 672-673
  power-protection systems
    backup power, 922
    explained, 919-921
    line conditioners, 922
    phone line surge protectors, 922
    surge protectors, 921
  preventative maintenance
    active/passive, 1011
    cleaning. *See* cleaning
    dust, 1020-1021
    heating and cooling, 1017
    operating environment, 1016
    pollutants, 1020-1021
    power cycling, 1017-1018
    power-line noise, 1018-1019
    RFI (radio-frequency interference), 1019-1020
    static electricity, 1018
    tool/supply vendors, 1000
    weekly and monthly checklists, 1011-1012
  safety, 1003-1004
  System Restore, 1012
  tools, 999-1000
    2 ½" ATA drive cables and adapters, 1003
    3 ½" drive enclosure, 1003
    cleaning materials, 1002
    data transfer cables and adapters, 1003
    DMMs (digital multimeters), 1002, 1005-1007
    electrical testing equipment, 1005
    electric screwdrivers, 1002, 1009
    ESD (electrostatic discharge) protection kits, 1003
    files, 1002
    flashlights, 1002

- hemostats, 1002
- infrared thermometers, 1010
- lithium coin cell batteries, 1003
- logic probes, 1007-1008
- loopback connector, 1005
- markers/pens, 1002
- memory testers, 1008-1009
- needle-nose pliers, 1002
- nut drivers, 1000
- nylon cable-ties, 1002
- outlet testers, 1008
- parts grabbers, 1000-1011
- POST crds, 1002
- PS/2 Y adapter, 1003
- screwdrivers, 1000
- spare parts, 1003
- temperature probes, 1010
- Torx drivers, 1001
- tweezers, 1000
- USB/FireWire cable adapter, 1003
- vises/clamps, 1002
- Windows 98/98 SE or Me Startup floppy, 1002
- Windows 98 2000/XP bootable CD, 1002
- wire cutters, 1002
- wire strippers, 1002

carrierless amplitude/phase (CAP), 780

CAS (column address strobe) latency, 335

cases, 933-934
- cover assembly, 969
- definition of, 28
- mounting motherboards in, 953-956
- no-tool, 1001

Casper's Electronics, 271

Cassette BASIC, 321

Category 3 cables, 818

Category 5 cables, 819

Category 6 cables, 819

Category 6a cables, 819

CATV (cable TV)
- cable bandwidth, 778
- cable modems, 776-778
- costs, 779
- explained, 776

CAV (constant angular velocity) technology, 593

CCleaner, 1012

CD audio connectors, 238

CD-DA, 571

CD drives, 526. *See also* CDs
- access times, 598
- bootable CDs, 606
- booting, 601, 993
- buffers/cache, 598
- buffer underruns, 601
- CAV (constant angular velocity) technology, 593
- choosing, 939
- CLV (constant linear velocity) technology, 593-595
- data transfer rates, 593
- definition of, 28
- DMA and Ultra-DMA, 598
- drive sealing, 600
- firmware updates, 607-608
- history of, 526-527
- interfaces, 598-599
- laser operation, 529
- loading mechanisms, 599-600
- mechanical drive operation, 530
- MultiAudio specification, 547
- MultiPlay specification, 547
- MultiRead specifications, 545-547
- self-cleaning lenses, 600
- table of CD-ROM drive speeds and transfer rates, 595
- troubleshooting, 1033
  - disc read failures, 602-605
  - disc write failures, 604
  - problems burning discs with Windows built-in recording, 605
  - slow drive speeds, 604-605

CD-E. *See* CD-RW discs

CD EXTRA, 576-577

CD-R discs
- capacity, 541
- construction and technology, 540-541
- copy protection, 588-589
- disc read errors, 603-605
- DRM (digital rights management), 589
- explained, 539
- For Music Use Only discs, 588
- media color, 541-542
- media recording speed ratings, 543

CD Roller, 586

CD-ROM discs. *See* CDs

CD-ROM drives. *See* CD drives

CD-RW discs, 543-545
- copy protection, 588-589
- disc read errors, 603-605
- disc write errors, 604
- DRM (digital rights management), 589
- explained, 539
- For Music Use Only discs, 588

CDs. *See also* CD drives
- audio data information, 533
- Blue Book standard (CD EXTRA), 576-577
- bootable CDs, 601-602, 606
- burning, 600-601
- capacity, 526, 536-537
- care and handling, 527
- care and maintenance, 606-607
- CD-DA, 571

- CD-R
  - capacity, 541
  - construction and technology, 540-541
  - disc read errors, 603-605
  - explained, 539
  - media color, 541-542
  - media recording speed ratings, 543
- CD-ROM, 571-572
- CD-RW, 543-545
  - disc read errors, 603-605
  - disc write errors, 604
  - explained, 539
- CD TEXT discs, 534-535
- construction and technology, 527
- copy protection, 536, 588-589
- DRM (digital rights management), 589
- DualDisc, 578
- EFM data encoding, 537-539
- file systems, 582
  - HFS (Hierarchical File System), 586
  - High Sierra, 583
  - ISO 9660, 583-584
  - Joliet, 584-585
  - Rock Ridge, 586
  - UDF (Universal Disk Format), 585-586
- form factor, 526
- For Music Use Only discs, 588
- frames, 533
- history of, 526-527
- hub clamping area, 530
- Labelflash direct disc labeling system, 602
- lands, 529
- lead-in, 531
- lead-out, 531
- LightScribe direct disc labeling system, 602
- mass production, 527-529
- Mount Rainier standard, 586-587
- multisession recording
  - DAO (Disc-at-Once) recording, 573
  - packet writing, 573-575
  - Track-at-Once, 573
- Orange Book standard, 572
- PCA (power calibration area), 531
- Photo CD, 575
- Picture CD, 576
- pits, 529
- PMA (power memory area), 531
- program area, 531
- read errors, 535-536
- ripping, 587-588
- sampling rates, 534
- Scarlet Book standard (SA-CD), 577-578
- sectors, 533, 572
- subcode bytes, 534
- Super Video CDs, 576
- table of CD formats, 570-571
- technical parameters, 532
- tracks, 530-531
- troubleshooting
  - disc read failures, 602-605
  - disc write failures, 604
  - problems burning discs with Windows built-in recording, 605
- virgin CDs, 540
- White Book standard (Video CD), 576
- Windows 2000/XP bootable CD, 1002

CD TEXT discs, 534-535

Celeron 4 chipsets
- ATI chipsets, 216
- Intel 96x series, 204-205
- Intel 915 family, 202-203
- Intel 925X family, 203
- Intel 945 Express family, 203
- Intel 955X, 204
- Intel 975X, 204
- Intel chipsets reference tables, 196-202
- NVIDIA, 216-217
- SiS chipsets, 215
- ULi chipsets, 215-216
- VIA chipsets, 216, 226

Celeron processors, 96, 100-101

cell phones, tethering, 795

cells, bit cells, 442

cellular broadband
- 3G mobile broadband, 783
- 4G mobile broadband, 783-784

central processing units (CPUs). ***See*** **specific processors (for example, Pentium)**

central switch (CS), 780

CFX12V power supply, 860, 863

chassis
- chassis intrusion connectors, 237
- definition of, 28
- thermally advantaged chassis
  - cooling fans, 149
  - maximum heatsink inlet temperatures, 150
  - processor ducts, 151
  - specifications, 150-151

Chassis Intrusion setting (Security menu), 311

checkpoint codes (POST), 977

chemical cleaners, 1013-1014

Chernobyl virus, 278

Cherry Corporation G8x-series keyboards, 745

chip creep, 346

chip on ceramic (COC) technology, 448

chips
- CISC (Complex Instruction Set Computer), 61
- EEPROM (electronically erasable programmable ROM), 272-273, 277-285
- EPROM (erasable programmable ROM), 271-272
- flash ROM, 272-273
- keyboard controller chips, upgrading, 277
- OTP (one-time programmable) chips, 270
- RISC (Reduced Instruction Set Computer), 61
- RTC/NVRAM (real-time clock/ nonvolatile memory) chips, 266
- Super I/O chips, 228

Chips and Technologies, 182

Chipset Configuration menu (BIOS Setup), 298-300

chipsets, 181
- 56Kbps modems, 792
- 82C206 chips, 182
- 82C836 SCAT (Single Chip AT) chipsets, 182
- AMD, 217
  - AMD 690 series, 221
  - AMD 700 series, 221-222
  - AMD 800 series, 222
  - AMD 900 series, 223-225
  - AMD 8000 (8151), 219
  - AMD A series, 225
  - AMD (ATI) 480x and 500 series, 220
  - reference table, 217-218
- ATI, 190, 216
- AT motherboards, 182
- CS8220 chipset, 182
- databooks, 936
- documentation, 262
- explained, 935-936
- history and development, 181-183
- hub architecture, 187-188
- HyperTransport interconnects, 188-190
- industry control of, 24
- integrated video/motherboard chipsets, 611
  - chipsets with integrated video for 64-bit AMD processors, 614-616
  - graphics chip market share, 612
  - Intel chipset integrated video, 612-613
  - third-party chipsets with integrated video for Intel processors, 614
- Intel, 183-184
  - 3x series, 205-208
  - 4x series, 206-208
  - 5x series, 208-211
  - 6x series, 211-213
  - 7x series, 213-215
  - 96x series, 204-205
  - 386/486 chipsets, 190
  - 915 family, 202-203
  - 925X family, 203
  - 945 Express family, 203
  - 955X, 204
  - 975X, 204
  - 82350 chipsets, 190
  - Extreme Graphics Architecture, 185
  - model numbers, 184
  - North Bridge, 185-187
  - Pentium 4 chipsets, 196-202
  - Pentium chipsets, 190-191
  - Pentium Pro chipsets, 192-195
  - South Bridge, 186-187
  - Super I/O chips, 186
- NEAT (New Enhanced AT) CS8221 chipset, 182
- NVIDIA Technologies, 216-217, 227
- PC/XT motherboards, 182
- SiS (Silicon Integrated Systems), 215
  - Athlon/Duron chipsets, 227
  - MuTIOL architecture, 189
- Super I/O chips, 228
- ULi, 215-216
- VIA Technologies, 189, 216, 226
- video adapter chipsets
  - identifying, 619-620
  - video processor, 619

CHS (cylinder head sector) addressing
- 2.1 GB barrier, 423
- 4.2 GB barrier, 423-425
- 528 MB barrier, 419-421
- CHS bit-shift translation, 421-423
- CHS/LBA conversions, 417-418
- compared to LBA (logical block address), 416-417

CIH virus, 278

Cinavia, 591

CIRC (cross-interleave Reed-Solomon code), 535

Cirque Glidepoint, 768-769

CISC (Complex Instruction Set Computer) chips, 61

citrus-based cleaners, 1013

clamps, 1002

Clean Boot CD package, 281

“clean room” approach to reverse-engineering software, 22

cleaning, 1012. *See also* care and maintenance
- CD/DVD drives, 600
- CDs, 606
- chemical-freeze sprays, 1014
- compressed air, 1014
- connectors, 1015-1016
- contact cleaners/lubricants, 1013

  - contacts, 1015-1016
  - disassembly and cleaning tools, 1013
  - erasers, 1015
  - keyboards, 755-756, 1016
  - keyswitches, 744
  - mice, 765, 1016
  - swabs, 1015
  - system disassembly, 1015
  - vacuum cleaners, 1014

Clear All DMI Event Log setting (Event Logging menu), 306

Clear All Passwords setting (BIOS Maintenance menu), 293

Clear Trusted Platform Module setting (BIOS Maintenance menu), 293

Clear User Password setting (Security menu), 311

ClickLock feature (IntelliMouse), 763

clients, 933

client/server networks, 802-804

Clock program (AMD), 138

clocks, 136-138. *See also* overclocking
  - clock signals, 49, 451
  - clock speed, 49-53, 333

closed loop feedback mechanism, 488

cloud-based storage, 522-523

clusters, 480

CLV (constant linear velocity) technology, 593-595

CMOS (Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor), 12

CMOS battery failed (error message), 980

CMOS checksum error – Defaults loaded (error message), 980

CMOS RAM
  - addresses, 285-287
  - backing up, 276-277
  - batteries
    - modern CMOS batteries, 925-927
    - obsolete/unique CMOS batteries, 927-928
    - troubleshooting, 928
  - configuring with BIOS Setup. *See* Setup program (BIOS)
  - definition of, 266-267
  - diagnostic status byte codes, 287

CmosPwd, 277

CMOSrest, 277

CMOSsave, 277

CNR (Communications and Networking Riser), 240

coaxial cables
  - Thicknet, 816-817
  - Thinnet, 817

coaxial PDIF sound card connectors, 688

COC (chip on ceramic) technology, 448

code-free DVD players, 592

code names for processors, 88-89

color coding
  - ATX motherboards, 172
  - power switch connectors, 869

Colossus, 5, 10

column address strobe (CAS) latency, 335

combo adapters, 815

commands. *See* specific commands

commercial diagnostic software, 990-991

Common Access Method ATA (CAM ATA), 379

communication ports, 733

Communications and Networking Riser (CNR), 240

compact disc read-only memory. *See* CDs; CD drives

CompactFlash, 509

compact form factor (CFX12V) power supply, 860, 863

Compaq
  - ATA. *See* ATA (AT Attachment)
  - BIOS error messages, 322
  - reverse engineering of IBM software, 21-22

compatible mode (parallel ports), 737

Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor (CMOS), 12

Complex Instruction Set Computer (CISC) chips, 61

Compliance Test Pattern setting (PCI Express Configuration menu), 297

component benchmarks, 49

COM ports. *See* serial ports

composite ferrite heads, 444

compressed air, 755, 1014

compression of sound card data, 692-693

computer history. *See* history of computers

compute shaders (DirectX), 647

CONFIG.SYS file, 996

configuration
  - documentation of, 946
  - hardware-assisted virtualization support, 69
  - HDDs (hard disk drives)
    - automatic drive detection, 966
    - explained, 962-963
  - network software, 842-843
  - parallel ports, 738
  - PATA (Parallel ATA), 393-395
  - power supply, 958-961
  - processor operating voltages, 87
  - SATA (Serial ATA), 407
  - serial ports, 733-734
  - SSDs (solid state drives), 962-963

Configure SATA as setting (Drive Configuration menu), 303

conflicts, IRQs (interrupt request channels), 259

connectors

- ATA (AT Attachment), 385
- cleaning procedures, 1015-1016
- floppy power connectors, 888-889
- hard drive connectors, 497-498
- keyboard/mouse interface connectors
  - hybrid mice, 762
  - keyboard connectors, 751-753
  - PS/2 mouse port, 761
  - serial interface, 760-761
  - troubleshooting, 755
  - USB (Universal Serial Bus), 762
- motherboard connectors, 228-234
  - alternative single-row front panel connector pinouts, 231
  - AMR (Audio Modem Riser), 240
  - ATAPI-style line-in connectors, 238
  - battery connector, 237
  - CD audio connectors, 238
  - chassis intrusion connectors, 237
  - CNR (Communications and Networking Riser), 240
  - front panel audio connector pinout, 236
  - front panel switch/LED connector pinouts, 230
  - IEEE 1394 (FireWire/i.LINK) connector, 235
  - infrared data front panel connector pinout, 237
  - LED and keylock connectors, 237
  - microprocessor fan power connectors, 239
  - power LED indications, 231
  - speaker connectors, 237
  - telephony connectors, 238
  - USB 1.1/2.0 USB header connector pinout, 233
  - USB 3.0 header connector pinout, 234-235
  - Wake on LAN connectors, 238
  - Wake on Ring connectors, 238
- motherboard power connectors
  - 4-pin +12V power connectors, 882-883
  - 4-pin to 8-pin +12V power connectors, 884-885
  - 8-pin +12V power connectors, 883-884
  - AT, 870-872
  - ATX12V 2.x 24-pin, 877-879
  - ATX/ATX12V 1.x, 872-877
  - backward/forward compatibility, 885-886
  - Dell proprietary ATX design, 887
  - explained, 870
  - PCG (Platform Compatibility Guide), 881
  - power switch connectors, 866-869
  - VRM (voltage regulator module), 879-880
- parallel port connectors, 734-735
- PATA (Parallel ATA) I/O connectors, 387-390
- PCI Express x16 Graphics Power connectors, 890-893
- peripheral power connectors, 887-888
- PS/2-type connector, 159
- SATA power connectors, 401-403, 889
- sound card connectors, 686-689
  - analog RCA, 689
  - aux in, 688
  - coaxial PDIF, 688
  - HDMI (High Definition Multimedia Interface), 688
  - line in sound card connectors, 687
  - line out sound card connectors, 687
  - microphone in connectors, 687
  - MIDI in/out, 688
  - mono in connectors, 687
  - optical SPDIF out, 688
  - rear out sound card connectors, 687
  - socketed Op Amp chips, 689
  - world clock I/O, 689
  - XLR input/output, 689
- USB (Universal Serial Bus) connectors, 710-713
  - Mini/Micro A/B connectors, 712
  - mini plugs and sockets, 711
  - Series A/B connectors, 712
- wired network adapter connectors, 815-816

Conner Peripherals, Inc. 2.5” drives, 465

constant angular velocity (CAV) technology, 593

constant linear velocity (CLV) technology, 593-595

constant voltage power supply, 845

consumption of power supply, calculating, 901-903

contact cleaners/lubricants, 1013-1016
contact start stop (CSS) design, 468
content scramble system (CSS), 590-591
contrast (monitors), 659-660
controllers. *See* adapters
conventional memory, 295
conventional memory barrier, 374
converting sector addresses, 417-418
Cooler Master CM Storm keyboards, 757
cooling. *See* heating/cooling issues
copy protection
  CDs, 536, 588-589
  DVDs, 589-590
    breakability of, 591
    Cinavia, 591
    CSS (content scramble system), 590-591
    ProtectDisc, 591
    region codes used by Blu-ray disc, 592
    RPC (regional playback control), 591-592
copyright, 21
cordless input devices. *See* wireless input devices
Core 2 processors
  chipsets
    Intel 3x series, 205-208
    Intel 4x series, 206-208
  overview, 108-110
core audio APIs, 683-684
Core i processors (Intel)
  chipsets
    Intel 5x series, 208-211
    Intel 6x series, 211-213
    Intel 7x series, 213-215
  Intel Atom, 115
  Ivy Bridge architecture, 114-115
  Nehalem architecture, 110-113
  overclocking, 142
  Sandy Bridge architecture, 113-114
Core Multiplexing Technology setting (BIOS main menu), 295
cores, unlocking, 139-140
cosmic ray-induced errors, 358
cover assembly (cases), 969
CPC Override setting (Memory Configuration menu), 297
CPP-GMR (current perpendicular-to-the-plane giant magneto-resistive) heads, 447
CPU at nnnn (error message), 980
CPU Fan Control setting (Fan Control Configuration menu), 309
CPU Frequency Multiplier setting (BIOS Maintenance menu), 294
CPU Info program (AMD), 138
CPU Internal Cache/External Cache feature (BIOS Setup), 316
CPU Microcode Update Revision setting (BIOS Maintenance menu), 294
CPU Stepping Signature setting (BIOS Maintenance menu), 294
CPU-Z, 29, 74, 185, 275, 356
CPUs (central processing units). *See* specific processors (for example, Pentium)
crashes, head crashes, 468
CRC (cyclical redundancy checking), 385
Creative Labs
  OpenAL website, 684
  Sound Blaster Pro sound cards, 682
  Sound Blaster sound cards, 682
creep, 908
CrossFire, 890-893
CrossFireX, 648-649, 900
cross-interleave Reed-Solomon code (CIRC), 535
crossover UTP (unshielded twisted-pair) cables, 821
CRT (cathode ray tube) monitors
  dot pitch, 664
  electron guns, 663
  persistence, 664
  raster, 665
  refresh rate, 664-665
  refresh rates, 657-659
  shadow masks, 664
  slotted masks, 664
CrystalDiskInfo, 411
crystals, quartz, 134-136
CS8220 chipset, 182
CS8221 chipset, 182
CSA (Canadian Standards Agency) certifications, 900
CSA Device setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 299
CS (cable select) pins, 393-395
CS (central switch), 780
CSEL (cable select) signals, 393
CSS (contact start stop) design, 468
CSS (content scramble system), 590-591
CST, 369, 1009
current perpendicular-to-the-plane giant magneto-resistive (CPP-GMR) heads, 447
custom PC configurations, 931-933
  audio/video editing systems, 932
  gaming systems, 932
  graphics systems, 931

  - home server systems, 932-933
  - home theater systems, 932
  - standard thick client, 933
  - standard thin client, 933
  - virtualization systems, 932

custom PROM (programmable ROM) programming, 271

CVT16, 64

cycle times, 333

cyclical redundancy checking (CRC), 385

cycling power, 908-911

cylinder head sector addressing. *See* CHS addressing

cylinders, 467

Cyrix
  - integrated video/motherboard chipsets, 612
  - processors, 88-89

Czochralski method, 69

D

DACs (digital-to-analog converters), 624, 681

DAE (digital audio extraction). *See* ripping CDs

daisy chains, 393

DAO (Disc-at-Once) recording, 573

DASP (drive action/slave present) signals, 393

data bits, 791

databooks, 936

data buses. *See* buses

data encoding
  - EFM (eight to fourteen modulation) data encoding, 537-539
  - EFM+ (eight to sixteen) data encoding, 558-559

dataflow analysis, 64-65

DataMaster design, 15

Data Over Cable Service Interface Specification (DOCSIS) standards, 777

Data sector field, 470

data transfer cables, 1003

data transfer rates. *See* transfer rates

data zone (DVDs), 550

DB-9 connectors, 760, 815

DB-15 cable (Thicknet), 816-817

DB-25 connectors, 760

DBB (dynamic bass boost), 699

db (decibels), 680

DCMA (Digital Millennium Copyright Act), 590

DC voltages
  - negative voltages, 847-848
  - positive voltages
    - voltage rails, 846-847
    - voltage regulators, 847

DDC (Display Data Channel), 630-631

DDR DIMMs, 348, 353

DDR SDRAM, 338-340, 621, 936

DDR2 DIMMs, 348, 353

DDR2 SDRAM, 340-342

DDR2 Voltage setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 299

DDR3 DIMMs, 34, 353

DDR3 dual-channel, 80

DDR3 SDRAM, 342-344

DDR3 triple-channel, 82

DDR4 SDRAM, 344-345

DDWG (Digital Display Working Group), 630

dead pixels (LCDs), 675

debouncing keystrokes, 747

decibels (db), 680

decimal-based multiples, prefixes for, 414-415

dedicated servo mechanisms, 492-493

Default Frequency Ratio setting (BIOS Maintenance menu), 294

deferred writes, 725

De Forest, Lee, 5, 11

delayed writes, 725

Dell proprietary ATX power connectors, 887

density, areal, 456-458

depot repair, 677

depth cueing, 644

designing systems. *See* system assembly

Desktop Form Factors website, 935

Desktop Management Interface (DMI), 306

Deutsche Industrie Norm (DIN), 740

development of computers. *See* history of computers

device drivers. *See* drivers

Device Power states, 906-908

DeviceTopology API, 683

Device Wire Adapter (DWA), 717

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol), 835-836

diagnostic status byte codes (CMOS RAM), 287

diagnostic tools. *See* specific tools

dialup modems. *See* modems

dial-up networks, 837

DIB (Dual Independent Bus) architecture, 65

dies, 71

differential NRZ (Non Return to Zero), 401

Digi-Key, 1000

digital audio extraction (DAE). *See* ripping CDs

digital display interfaces
  - DisplayPort, 636-640
  - DMS-59, 632
  - DVI (Digital Video Interface), 630-632

  - HDMI (High Definition Multimedia Interface), 633-636
  - overview, 629

Digital Display Working Group (DDWG), 630

digital infrared thermometers, 916

digital light processing (DLP) projectors, 667

digital micromirror device (DMD), 666

Digital Millennium Copyright Act (DCMA), 590

digital multimeters. *See* DMMs

Digital Research, 16, 22

digital rights management (DRM), 589

digital signal processor (DSP), 688

digital subscriber line. *See* DSL

digital versatile discs. *See* DVDs

digital-to-analog converters (DACs), 624, 681

Digital Video Express (DIVX), 580

Digital Video Interface (DVI), 630-632

digitized sound. *See* Waveform audio

DIMMs (dual inline memory modules), 346, 936
- 168-pin SDRAM DIMMs, 348
- DDR DIMMs, 348, 353
- DDR2 DIMMs, 348, 353
- DDR3 DIMMs, 349
- purchasing, 365
- SDR DIMMs, 352

DIN (Deutsche Industrie Norm), 740

DIP (dual inline package) chips, 346

DirectCompute, 617

direct disc labeling systems, 602

direct-mapped cache, 59

Direct Media Interface (DMI), 80, 188, 240

direct memory access. *See* DMA

direct overwrite, 544

DirectSound wrappers, 684

DirectX, 646-647, 683

disassembly for cleaning, 1015

Discard Changes command (BIOS Exit menu), 316

Disc-at-Once (DAO) recording, 573

disc-stamping operation (CDs), 528

discrete multitone (DMT), 780

discs. *See* CDs; DVDs

DiscT@2, 602

DISK BOOT FAILURE (error message), 322

disk drive power connectors, 887-888

disk sweep, 491

Diskette Controller setting (Floppy Configuration menu), 306

Diskette Write Protect setting (Floppy Configuration menu), 306

DISKPART command, 481

disks, floppy. *See* floppy disks

Display Data Channel (DDC), 630-631

display interfaces
- digital display interfaces, 629
  - DisplayPort, 636-640
  - DMS-59, 632
  - DVI (Digital Video Interface), 630-632
  - HDMI (High Definition Multimedia Interface), 633-636
- overview, 626-627
- TV display interfaces, 641-642
- VGA (Video Graphics Array), 627-629

DisplayMate, 671

DisplayPort, 636-640

Display Power Management Signaling (DPMS), 660-661

Display Setup Prompt setting (Boot Configuration menu), 298

displays. *See* monitors

Display switch is set incorrectly (error message), 980

distributed parity, blocked data with, 435

DIVX (Digital Video Express), 580

d-limonene, 1013

DLP (digital light processing) projectors, 667

DMA (direct memory access)
- busmaster DMA, 397
- channels, 259
- multiword, 397
- singleword, 396-397
- UDMA (Ultra-DMA), 383-386, 397

DMA Mode setting (Drive Configuration menu), 303

DMD (digital micromirror device), 666

DMI (Desktop Management Interface), 306

DMI (Direct Media Interface), 80, 188, 240

DMI Event Log setting (Event Logging menu), 306

DMMs (digital multimeters), 754, 913, 1002, 1005-1007
- back probing, 915-916
- buying tips, 914-915
- measuring voltage with, 915-916

DMS-59, 632

DMT (discrete multitone), 780

DOCSIS (Data Over Cable Service Interface Specification) standards, 777

Dolby Digital surround sound, 700

doping, 11, 70

DOS operating system

- boot process, 996-997
- drive limitations, 431
- DOS extenders, 46
- DPMI (DOS protected mode interface), 46
- free and open-source DOS versions, 22
- licensing, 22

dot pitch, 654, 664

dots per inch (DPI), 758

double data rate SDRAM. *See* DDR SDRAM

Double-Density recording, 451-452

double distributed parity, blocked data with, 435

double-sided memory modules, 346

DPI (dots per inch), 758

DPMI (DOS protected mode interface), 46

DPMS (Display Power Management Signaling), 660-661

drains (MOSFETs), 12

DRAM (dynamic RAM)

- compared to SRAM, 329
- DDR SDRAM (double data rate SDRAM), 338-340
- DDR2 SDRAM (double data rate 2 SDRAM), 340-342
- DDR3 SDRAM (double data rate 3 SDRAM), 342-344
- DDR4 SDRAM (double data rate 4 SDRAM), 344-345
- explained, 327-329
- FPO DRAM (Fast Page Mode DRAM), 335-336
- RDRAM (Rambus DRAM), 345
- SDRAM (synchronous DRAM), 337-338

DR-DOS/OpenDOS Enhancement Project, 22

drive action/slave present (DASP) signals, 393

Drive Configuration menu (BIOS Setup), 302-305

Drive Installed setting (Drive Configuration menu), 303

DriverPacks, 408

drivers. *See also* BIOS

- definition of, 22
- sound card drivers, 693
- video drivers, 672

drives. *See* CD drives; DVD drives; floppy drives; hard drives

DRM (digital rights management), 589

DSK (Dvorak Simplified Keyboard), 754

DSLAM (DSL access multiplexer), 780

DSL (digital subscriber line)

- ADSL (Asymmetric DSL), 781
- availability, 780
- CAP (carrierless amplitude/phase), 780
- costs, 782-783
- DMT (discrete multitone), 780
- DSLAM (DSL access multiplexer), 780
- explained, 779-780
- low-pass filters, 780
- SDSL (Symmetrical DSL), 781
- security, 782
- self-installing, 781-782
- transceivers, 780
- VDSL (Very High-Data-Rate DSL), 781

DSP (digital signal processor), 688

DTS Surround sound, 700

DTX motherboards, 176

dual-cavity PGA package, 97

dual-channel memory, 356-357

dual-core processors. *See* multi-core processors

DualDisc, 578

dual-drive PATA (Parallel ATA) configuration, 393-395

dual-GPU scene rendering

- AMD CrossFireX, 648-649
- AMD Eyefinity, 650
- NVIDIA SLI, 648

dual-head graphics adapters, 667

Dual Independent Bus architecture (DIB), 65

dual inline memory modules. *See* DIMMs

dual inline package (DIP) chips, 346

dual-link DVI (Digital Video Interface), 630

dual rank memory modules, 346

dual-speed switches, 829

Dualview, 667

Duron processors

- chipsets, 185
  - nForce/nForce2, 227
  - reference table, 217-218
  - SiS chipsets, 227
- overview, 118

dust, 1014, 1020-1021

DVD-5 discs, 555

DVD-9 discs, 555

DVD-10 discs, 556

DVD-18 discs, 556

DVD CCA (DVD Copy Control Association), 589

DVD Copy Control Association (DVD CCA), 589

DVD drives. *See also* DVDs

- access times, 598
- booting from floppy disk, 601
- buffers/cache, 598
- choosing, 939

- compatibility, 580
- definition of, 28
- DMA and Ultra-DMA, 598
- drive sealing, 600
- DVD Multi specification, 566-567
- firmware updates, 607-608
- interfaces, 598-599
- loading mechanisms, 599-600
- MultiAudio specification, 547
- MultiPlay specification, 547
- MultiRead specifications, 545-547
- self-cleaning lenses, 600
- speed, 595-597
- troubleshooting, 1033
  - disc read failures, 602-605
  - disc write failures, 604
  - problems burning discs with Windows built-in recording, 605
  - slow drive speeds, 604-605

DVD Forum, 548

DVD Multi specification, 566-567

DVD-R, 562-563

DVD+R, 564-566

DVD-RAM, 560-562

DVD-R DL, 563

DVD+R DL, 566

DVD-RW, 563-564

DVD+RW, 564-566

DVD+RW Alliance, 548

DVD-Video, 548

DVDs. *See also* DVD drives
- audio data information, 553-554
- bootable DVDs, 601-602
- capacity, 555-558
- care and maintenance, 606-607
- construction and technology, 549-550
- copy protection, 589-590
  - breakability of, 591
  - Cinavia, 591
  - CSS (content scramble system), 590-591
  - region codes used by Blu-ray disc, 592
  - RPC (regional playback control), 591-592
- copy protectionProtectDisc, 591
- data zone, 550
- DIVX (Digital Video Express), 580
- DVD-5, 555
- DVD-9, 555
- DVD-10, 556
- DVD-18, 556
- DVD Forum, 548
- DVD-R, 562-563
- DVD+R, 564-566
- DVD-RAM, 560-562
- DVD-R DL, 563
- DVD+R DL, 566
- DVD-RW, 563-564
- DVD+RW, 564-566
- DVD+RW Alliance, 548
- DVD-Video, 548
- EFM+ data encoding, 558-559
- error handling, 554-555
- explained, 547-548
- frames, 553-554
- HD-DVD, 569-570
- history of, 548
- hub clamping area, 550
- Labelflash direct disc labeling system, 602
- lead-in zone, 550
- lead-out zone, 550
- LightScribe direct disc labeling system, 602
- media compatibility, 560
- OTP (opposite track path) construction, 556-557
- playing on PCs, 581
- PTP (parallel track path) construction, 556-557
- sectors, 553-554
- table of DVD formats and standards, 578-580
- table of recordable DVD standards, 559
- technical parameters, 551-553
- tracks, 550-551
- troubleshooting
  - disc read failures, 602-605
  - disc write failures, 604
  - problems burning discs with Windows built-in recording, 605

DVI (Digital Video Interface), 630-632

DVI-D (integrated) connector, 632

DVI-I (integrated) connector, 631

DVMT Mode setting (Video Configuration menu), 307

Dvorak, August, 754

Dvorak Simplified Keyboard (DSK), 754

DWA (Device Wire Adapter), 717

D. W. Electrochemicals, Stabilant 22a, 744

DXDIAG utility, 697

dynamic bass boost (DBB), 699

dynamic execution
- dataflow analysis, 65
- multiple branch prediction, 64
- speculative execution, 65

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), 835-836

dynamic RAM. *See* DRAM

Dynamic shader linkage (DirectX), 647

E

EarthLink, 795

EAX (environmental audio extensions), 685

ECC (error correcting code), 360-361, 434, 472-473

ECC Event Logging setting (Event Logging menu), 306

ECC sector field, 470

ECHS. *See* bit-shift translation

Eckert, John P., 6, 10

economy interconnection (EI) connectors, 888

ECP (Enhanced Capabilities) parallel ports, 737-738

ECP Mode Use DMA setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 301

ED (extra-high density) floppy format, 459

EDD (Enhanced Disk Drive) specifications, 421

edge-triggered interrupt sensing, 255

EDO RAM (extended data out RAM), 336-337

EEPROM (electronically erasable programmable ROM)
- flash ROM upgrades, 277-278
  - with automated bootable media images, 280
  - BIOS Setup executable upgrades, 279-280
  - emergency flash ROM recovery, 282-285
  - safety, 282
  - Windows executable upgrades, 279
  - with user-created bootable media, 280-281
  - write protection, 278
- overview, 327, 272-273

EFM (eight to fourteen modulation) data encoding, 537-539

EFM+ (eight to sixteen) data encoding, 558-559

EI (economy interconnection) connectors, 888

eight to fourteen modulation (EFM) data encoding, 537-539

eight to sixteen (EFM+) data encoding, 558-559

EISA (Extended Industry Standard Architecture) buses, 246, 256

EIST setting (Power menu), 312

electric computers, 5

electric screwdrivers, 1002, 1009

electrical costs, 908-909

Electrical Numerical Integrator and Calculator (ENIAC), 10

electrical testing equipment, 1005

electrically erasable programmable ROM (EEPROM), 327

electricity. *See* PSUs (power supply units)

electroforming, 527

electromagnetism, 440

electron guns (CRT), 663

electronically erasable programmable ROM (EEPROM), 272-273

electronic computers, 5

electrostatic discharge (ESD) protection, 945, 1003

El Torito support, 601-602

embedded servo mechanisms, 492

Enabled state (APM), 904

enabling. *See* configuration

encoders/decoders (endecs), 450

encoding schemes, 442
- comparison of, 453-454
- explained, 450-451
- EFM (eight to fourteen modulation) data encoding, 537-539
- EFM+ (eight to sixteen) data encoding, 558-559
- FM (Frequency Modulation), 451
- MFM (Modified Frequency Modulation), 442, 451-452
- RLL (Run Length Limited), 442, 452-453

endecs, 378, 450

EndpointVolume API, 683

Energy 2000 standard, 661

Energy Lake setting (Power menu), 313

Energy Star standard, 660

ENERGY STAR systems, 904

Englebart, Douglas, 757

Enhanced 3DNow! technology, 64

Enhanced 101-key keyboards, 739-740

Enhanced Capabilities (ECP) parallel ports, 737-738

Enhanced Disk Drive. *See* EDD

Enhanced Parallel Port (EPP), 737

ENIAC (Electrical Numerical Integrator and Calculator), 10

environmental acclimation (HDDs), 495

environmental audio extensions (EAX), 685

EPP (Enhanced Parallel Port), 737

EPROM (erasable programmable ROM), 271-272

EPS power supply, 858-860

EPS12V power supply, 858-860

erasable programmable ROM (EPROM), 271-272

erasers, 272, 1015

ergonomic keyboards, 754

Ergonomic Resources, 743, 754

error correcting code (ECC), 360-361, 434, 472-473

Error loading operating system (error message), 323-324

error messages. *See also* troubleshooting
- ACPI (Advanced Configuration and Power Interface) error codes, 319
- BIOS error messages
  - AMI BIOS, 322
  - Award BIOS, 322, 984-987
  - Award BIOS/Phoenix FirstBIOS, 980-981
  - Compaq BIOS, 322
  - explained, 319-320
  - IBM BIOS, 320-321
  - Phoenix BIOS, 322
- CD read errors, 535-536
- DVD errors, 554-555
- Fatal Exception errors, 1026
- MBR boot error messages, 322-323
  - Error loading operating system, 323-324
  - Invalid partition table, 323
  - Missing operating system, 324
- memory errors, 370
- Missing operating system, 1031
- POST errors. *See* POST (power on self test)
- soft errors, 328
- STOP errors, 1025

eSATA (external SATA), 404-405

eSATAp (Power Over eSATA), 405-407

eSATA USB Hybrid Port (EUHP), 405

ESD (electrostatic discharge) protection, 945, 1003

Estridge, Don, 15

Ethernet, 805
- 10 Gigabit Ethernet (10GBASE-T), 807
- cables. *See* cables
- development of, 6
- explained, 806
- Fast Ethernet, 806
- Gigabit Ethernet, 806-807
- hubs, 828-829
- switches, 827-828, 842
  - address storing, 828
  - compared to hubs, 828-829
  - dual-speed, 829
  - managed/unmanaged, 828
  - placement of, 830-831
  - ports, 830
  - power-saving features, 829
- Wi-Fi (Wireless Fidelity)
  - 802.11a standard, 810
  - 802.11ac standard, 812
  - 802.11b standard, 808-810
  - 802.11g standard, 810-811
  - 802.11n standard, 811-812
  - access points, 831
  - DHCP support, 835-836
  - explained, 807-808
  - network speeds, 813
  - NICs (network interface cards), 832
  - point-to-point topology, 833
  - security, 833-835
  - signal boosters, 832
  - specialized antennas, 832
  - star topology, 833
  - users per access point, 836
  - wireless bridges, 832
  - wireless repeaters, 832

EUHP (eSATA USB Hybrid Port), 405

Event Log Capacity setting (Event Logging menu), 306

Event Log Configuration menu (BIOS Setup), 306-307

Event Log Validity setting (Event Logging menu), 307

evolution of computers. *See* history of computers

exFAT, 480, 520

Exit Discarding Changes command (BIOS Exit menu), 316

Exit menu (BIOS Setup), 315-316

Exit Saving Changes command (BIOS Exit menu), 316

expansion cards, 969

extended ATX motherboards, 172

extended ATX power supply, 860

Extended Burn-in Mode setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 299

Extended Configuration setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 299

extended data out RAM (EDO RAM), 336-337

Extended Industry Standard Architecture (EISA) buses, 246, 256

extended memory, 295

extenders (DOS), 46

external cache, 330

external data buses, 42

external hubs, 706

external SATA (eSATA), 404-405

external speakers. *See* speakers

extra-high density (ED) floppy format, 459

extranets, 801

Extreme Graphics Architecture, 185

Eyefinity, 617, 650

F

F7 BIOS Flash Update, 279

Face Wizard, 275

Faggin, Frederico, 30-31

Failsafe Watchdog setting (BIOS Maintenance menu), 294

failures (memory)
  hard fails, 357
  soft errors, 357-359
failures (power), troubleshooting, 911-912
  diagnostic procedures, 912
  digital infrared thermometers, 916
  DMMs (digital multimeters), 913
    back probing, 915-916
    buying tips, 914-915
    measuring voltage with, 915-916
  inadequate cooling, 913
  overloaded power supply, 912-913
  variable voltage transformers, 917
Fan Control Configuration menu (BIOS Setup), 309
fans, 149
  BIOS Setup settings, 309
  power connectors, 239
Faraday, Michael, 440
Fastchip, 272
Fast Ethernet, 806
Fast Mode parallel ports, 737
Fast Page Mode DRAM (FPO DRAM), 335-336
Fast Startup mode, 998-999
FAT32 (file allocation table, 32-bit), 480
FAT64, 480, 520
FAT (file allocation table), 480
fatal errors, 976, 1026
fathers (CDs), 527
fault tolerance
  ECC (error correcting code), 360-361
  parity checking, 359-360
FCC (Federal Communications Commission) certifications, 900
FC-PGA (flip-chip pin grid array), 75
FDDI (Fiber Distributed Data Interface), 826
FDI (Flexible Display Interface), 80
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) certifications, 900
Femto air bearing sliders, 449-450
ferrite read/write heads, 444
FHSS (frequency hopping spread spectrum), 813
Fiber Distributed Data Interface (FDDI), 826
fiber to the curb (FTTC), 781
fiber to the home (FTTH), 781
fiber to the neighborhood (FTTN), 781
fiber to the premises (FTTP), 781
FIC (flex interconnect cable), 448
fields, magnetic, 441-442
Fifth SATA Master setting (Drive Configuration menu), 304
file allocation table. *See* FAT
file systems
  CD file systems, 582
    HFS (Hierarchical File System), 586
    High Sierra, 583
    ISO 9660, 583-584
    Joliet, 584-585
    Rock Ridge, 586
    UDF (Universal Disk Format), 585-586
  exFAT, 480
  FAT (file allocation table), 480
  FAT32 (file allocation table, 32-bit), 480
  for flash memory, 520
  NTFS (Windows NT File System), 480
files
  AUTOEXEC.BAT, 997
  CONFIG.SYS 996
  hiberfil.sys, 998
  MSDOS.SYS, 996
  Ntbtlog.txt, 998
files (metal), 1002
filters
  air filters, 494-495
  low-pass filters, 780
  polarizing LCD filters, 661
FireWire
  compared to USB, 722-725
  explained, 718
  FireWire 400, 718-719
  FireWire 800, 718-720
  FireWire 3200, 721
  hot-plugging, 725-728
  speed of, 723-725
  tailgates, 384
firmware, 264, 273
  upgrades, 607-608, 619
"First Draft of a Report on the EDVAC" (von Neumann), 6
first-party memory modules, 364
First SATA Master setting (Drive Configuration menu), 304
Fixed Disk Boot Sector setting (BIOS Maintenance menu), 294
fixed disk drives. *See* HDDs (hard disk drives)
Flash-based SSDs, 512-513
flashlights, 1002
flash memory, 326, 507
  card capacities, 518
  card readers, 520-521
  CompactFlash, 509
  comparison of, 517-519
  development of, 507
  device sizes, 509
  explained, 508-509
  file systems, 520

- keychain devices, 507
- Lexar Memory Stick Pro, 511
- Lexar Memory Stick Pro Duo, 511
- MMC (MultiMediaCard), 510
- NAND (Not AND), 508
- NOR (Not OR), 508
- PC Card, 511
- ReadyBoost support, 521-522
- SD (SecureDigital), 510
- SmartMedia, 509, 510
- Sony Memory Stick, 510
- Sony Memory Stick Micro, 511
- Sony Memory Stick XC, 511
- speed classes, 519-520
- SSD (solid-state drive)
  - applications, 515
  - definition of, 511
  - Flash-based SSDs, 512-513
  - partition alignment, 515
  - SLC (single-level cell) versus MLC (multilevel cell), 513-514
  - SSD awareness in Windows, 514
  - TRIM command, 514-515
  - virtual SSD (RAMdisk), 512
- thumb devices, 507
- USB flash drives, 516-517
- xD-Picture Card, 511

flash ROM (read-only memory), 272-273
- recovering, 282-285
- upgrading, 277-278
  - with automated bootable media images, 280
  - BIOS Setup executable upgrades, 279-280
  - safety, 282
  - with user-created bootable media, 280-281
  - Windows executable upgrades, 279
  - write protection, 278

Flat Panel Display-Link (FPD-Link), 629

flat shading, 642

FlexATX motherboards, 174-175

Flex ATX power supply, 864-866

Flexible Display Interface (FDI), 80

flex interconnect cable (FIC), 448

flicker (screen), 664

flicker-free refresh rates, 658

flip-chip pin grid array (FC-PGA), 75

floating point units (math coprocessors), 87

Floppy A setting (Floppy Configuration menu), 306

Floppy Configuration menu (BIOS Setup), 305-306

floppy disks
- booting from, 601
- ED (extra-high density) floppy format, 459
- Windows 98/98SE or Me Startup floppy, 1002

Floppy disks(s) fail (error message), 980

floppy drives, 523. *See also* magnetic storage
- BIOS Setup settings, 305-306
- power connectors, 888-889

Flowers, Thomas, 5, 10

fluid dynamic bearings, 496

flux, 442

FM (Frequency Modulation) encoding, 451

FM synthesis, 691

FMA4, 64

foam element keyswitches, 743-744

ForceWare v81.85 (NVIDIA), 648

FORMAT command, 477

form factors
- definition of, 933
- HDDs (hard disk drives)
  - 1” hard drives, 466
  - 1.8” hard drives, 466
  - 2.5” hard drives, 465
  - 3.5” half-height drives, 465
  - 5.25” drives, 464-465
  - table of, 463-464
- motherboard form factors. *See* motherboards
- power supply form factors
  - ATX/ATX12V, 852-854
  - CFX12V, 860, 863
  - EPS/EPS12V, 858-860
  - explained, 849-850
  - Flex ATX, 864-866
  - LFX12V, 863
  - proprietary standards, 851
  - PS3, 856
  - SFX/SFX12V, 854-858
  - table of, 851
  - TFX12V, 860

Form Factors website, 172

formatting hard drives
- high-level formatting, 477, 482
- low-level formatting, 477-478
  - standard recording, 478
  - ZBR (zoned-bit recording), 478-480
- partitions, 480-481

For Music Use Only discs, 588

forward compatibility of motherboard power connectors, 885-886

Fourth SATA Master setting (Drive Configuration menu), 304

Fowler-Nordheim tunneling, 508

FPD-Link (Flat Panel Display-Link), 629

FPO DRAM (Fast Page Mode DRAM), 335-336

FPUs, 95

fractioned T-1 lines, 788

Frame Buffer Size setting (Video Configuration menu), 307

frames (DVDs), 553-554

fraudulent processors, 74

free diagnostic software, 991

FreeDOS, 22

free magnetic layers, 446

frequency, 810

frequency hopping spread spectrum (FHSS), 813

Frequency Modulation (FM) encoding, 451

frequency response, 680, 698

frequency synthesizers, 136

frequency timing generator (FTG), 136

Front Panel 1394 Port 1 setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 301

Front Panel 1394 Port 2 setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 301

front panel motherboard-controlled switches, 866-868

front panel power supply AC switches, 868-869

Front Side Bus (FSB) Frequency setting (BIOS main menu), 295

FrozenCPU.com, 941

frozen systems, troubleshooting, 1030-1034

FSB (front side bus). *See* buses

FSP (Fortron Source Power), Flex ATX power supply, 864-866

FTG (frequency timing generator), 136

FTTC (fiber to the curb), 781

FTTH (fiber to the home), 781

FTTN (fiber to the neighborhood), 781

FTTP (fiber to the premises), 781

full-duplex mode, 806, 828

full-duplex operation, 815

Full On state (APM), 904

full-size AT motherboards, 157-158

fully associative mapped cache, 59

functions (USB), 706

Fusion/HSA (Heterogeneous Systems Architecture) APUs, 131-132

FX Bulldozer chipsets, 223-225

FX processors (AMD), 128-131

G

G0 Working power state, 906

G1 Sleeping power state, 906

G2/S5 Soft Off power state, 907

G3 Mechanical Off power state, 907

G8x-series keyboards (Cherry Corporation), 745

gaming
- 3D graphics accelerators. *See* 3D graphics accelerators
- APIs, 645
  - DirectX, 646-647
  - OpenGL, 646
- optimizing system for, 932

ganged heads, 485

gang programmers, 270

Gap sector field, 470

Gate A20 Option feature (BIOS Setup), 317

gates (MOSFETs), 12

GDDR2 SDRAM, 621

GDDR3 SDRAM, 622

GDDR4 SDRAM, 622

GDDR5 SDRAM, 622

GeForce SLI website, 648

generic hubs, 706

generic PCs. *See* white-box systems

geometry, 644

ghost images (monitors), 664

GHz (gigahertz), 36, 332

GI (guard interval), 812

Giant Brains, or Machines That Think (Berkeley), 19

giant magneto-resistive (GMR) heads, 446-447

GiB (gigabinarybytes), 420

Gigabit Ethernet, 806-807

Gigabyte Face Wizard, 275

gigahertz (GHz), 36, 332

GIMPS, 991

glass in hard disks, 441

Glidepoint, 768-769

Global Engineering Documents, 381

GM Vehicle Calibration Information website, 272

GMR (giant magneto-resistive) heads, 446-447

Gouraud shading, 643

GPT (GUID Partition Table), 432-434

GPT Loader (Paragon), 434

GPU (video graphics processor), 619

GPU-Z, 620

Grantsdale (915) chipsets, 202-203

Graphene-based transistors, 13

graphics
- 3D graphics accelerators. *See* 3D graphics accelerators
- Extreme Graphics Architecture, 185
- optimizing system for, 931

graphics adapters. *See* video adapters

gray code, 490

green power switch connector wires, 869

grounding loops, 818

guard interval (GI), 812

GUID Partition Table (GPT), 432-434

H

half-bridge forward converting switching power supply, 893-894

half-duplex operation, 815

Halt On setting (Boot menu), 314

hand tools

- 3 ½″ drive enclosure, 1003
- cleaning materials, 1002
- data transfer cables and adapters, 1003
- electric screwdrivers, 1002
- ESD (electrostatic discharge) protection kits, 1003
- files, 1002
- flashlights, 1002
- hemostats, 1002
- lithium coin cell batteries, 1003
- markers/pens, 1002
- needle-nose pliers, 1002
- nut drivers, 1000
- nylon cable-ties, 1002
- parts grabbers, 1000, 1011
- POST cards, 1002
- PS/2 Y adapter, 1003
- screwdrivers, 1000
- spare parts, 1003
- Torx drivers, 1001
- tweezers, 1000
- USB/FireWire cable adapter, 1003
- vises/clamps, 1002
- Windows 98 Startup floppy, 1002
- Windows 2000/XP bootable CD, 1002
- wire cutters, 1002
- wire strippers, 1002

hard disk drives. *See* HDDs (hard disk drives)

HARD DISK INSTALL FAILURE (error message), 980

Hard Disk Pre-Delay setting (Drive Configuration menu), 303

Hard disk(s) diagnosis fail (error message), 980

Hard Drive setting (Power menu), 313

hard error rates (HERs), 357

hard memory fails, 357

hardcards, 378

hardware monitoring display (BIOS Setup), 310

hardware resources, 942

harmonic distortion, 680, 698

Haughton, Ken, 462

HDAs (head disk assemblies), 468

HDDs (hard disk drives). *See also* ATA (AT Attachment); magnetic storage; SSD (solid-state drive)

- 0.85″ drive, 466
- 305 RAMAC (Random Access Method of Accounting and Control), 439
- actuators, 467
- air filters, 494-495
- areal density, 456-458
- ATA drive capacity limitations, 413-414
  - 2.1 GB barrier, 423
  - 2.2 TB barrier, 432-434
  - 4.2 GB barrier, 423-425
  - 8.4 GB barrier, 427-428
  - 137 GB barrier and beyond, 429-430
  - BIOS commands versus ATA commands, 418-419
  - BIOS limitations, 415-416
  - CHS bit-shift translation, 421-423
  - CHS/LBA conversions, 417-418
  - CHS limitations, 419-421
  - CHS versus LBA, 416-417
  - GPT (GUID Partition Table), 432-434
  - LBA-assist translation, 425-427
  - table of, 414
- BIOS Setup settings, 302-305
- cables/connectors, 497-498
- capacity, 462-463
  - BIOS limitations, 498-499
  - capacity limitations, 498
  - operating system limitations, 499-500
- choosing, 938-939
- configuration
  - automatic drive detection, 966
  - configuration items, 497
  - explained, 962-963
- cooling. *See* heating/cooling issues
- costs, 463
- CSS (contact start stop) design, 468
- cylinders, 467
- definition of, 28, 461
- dual-drive configurations (PATA), 393-395
- ECC (error correction code), 472-473
- form factors
  - 1″ hard drives, 466
  - 1.8″ hard drives, 466
  - 2.5″ hard drives, 465
  - 3.5″ half-height drives, 465
  - 5.25″ drives, 464-465
  - table of, 463-464

- head actuator mechanisms, 487
  - stepper motors, 487-488
  - voice-coil actuators, 488-489
- heads, 468
  - air bearing, 469
  - automatic head parking, 493-494
  - HDAs (head disk assemblies), 468
  - head crashes, 468
  - head sliders, 448-450
  - head/medium interaction, 469-470
  - read/write heads, 443-447, 458-460, 485-487
- high-level formatting, 477, 482
- hot-swappable drives, 727
- installation, 963-965
- load/unload mechanism, 468
- logic boards, 496-497
- low-level formatting, 477-478
  - standard recording, 478
  - ZBR (zoned-bit recording), 478-480
- mirroring, 434-435
- operating system limitations, 430-432
- partitioning, 480-481
- performance
  - access times, 503
  - average seek times, 502
  - cache programs, 503-504
  - interleave, 504
  - latency, 503
  - transfer rates, 500-502
- platters, 466, 483-484
- RAID (redundant array of independent disks)
  - levels, 434-436
  - onboard BIOS, 274
  - software RAID, 436-437
- recording media
  - AFC (antiferromagnetically coupled), 485
  - oxide, 484
  - thin-film, 484-485
- read/write heads, 443-444
  - ferrite, 444
  - GMR (giant magneto-resistive), 446-447
  - MIG (Metal-In-Gap), 444
  - MR (magneto-resistive), 445-446
  - PMR (perpendicular magnetic recording), 458-460
  - TF (thin film), 444-445
- reliability
  - MTBF (mean time between failures), 504
  - PFA (Predictive Failure Analysis), 505
  - S.M.A.R.T. (Self-Monitoring, Analysis, and Reporting Technology), 504-506
- Safe Removal settings, 726-727
- sectors, 466
  - 512-byte sector on modern drive, 472
  - Advanced Format (4K sectors), 473-475
  - data bytes, 470
  - fields, 470
  - gaps in, 470
  - headers/trailers, 471
  - numbering, 470
  - sector drive partition alignment, 475-477
  - usable space, 471
  - Western Digital WD1003/WD1006 (IBM AT) 512-byte sector, 471-472
  - Xebec 1210/1220 (IBM XT) 512-byte sector format, 471
- seek times, 463
- servo mechanisms, 489-493
  - dedicated servo, 492-493
  - disk sweep, 491
  - embedded servo, 492
  - gray code, 490
  - servowriters, 490
  - thermal recalibration, 490
  - wedge servo, 491-492
- spindle motors, 495-496
- spin rates, 467
- striping, 434-435
- striping with parity, 434
- technological advancements, 462-463
- tracks, 466
  - defined, 470
  - densities, 468
- transfer rates, 463
- troubleshooting, 1030-1034
- Winchester drives, 462
- zones, 478

HD-DVD, 569-570

HDMI (High Definition Multimedia Interface), 633-636, 688

HDMI Forum website, 636

head actuator mechanisms
- servo mechanisms, 489-493
  - dedicated servo, 492-493
  - disk sweep, 491
  - embedded servo, 492
  - gray code, 490
  - servowriters, 490
  - thermal recalibration, 490
  - wedge servo, 491-492
- stepper motors, 487-488
- voice-coil actuators, 488-489

head crashes, 468

head disk assemblies (HDAs), 468

head sliders, 448-450

headers (sector), 471

head/medium interaction (HDDs), 469

headphones, 699

heads
- air bearing, 469
- automatic head parking, 493-494
- cautions, 468
- HDAs (head disk assemblies), 468
- head actuator mechanisms
  - stepper motors, 487-488
  - voice-coil actuators, 488-489
- head crashes, 468
- head/medium interaction, 469-470
- head sliders, 448-450
- read/write heads, 440-444, 485-487
  - ferrite, 444
  - GMR (giant magneto-resistive), 446-447
  - MIG (Metal-In-Gap), 444
  - MR (magneto-resistive), 445-446
  - PMR (perpendicular magnetic recording), 458-460
  - TF (thin film), 444-445
- servo mechanisms, 489-493
  - dedicated servo, 492-493
  - disk sweep, 491
  - embedded servo, 492
  - gray code, 490
  - servowriters, 490
  - thermal recalibration, 490
  - wedge servo, 491-492

heat spreaders, 75

heating/cooling issues
- hard disk temperature acclimation, 495
- heatsinks
  - active heatsinks, 143-145
  - boutique heatsinks, 146
  - choosing, 941
  - heatsink clips, 143
  - installation, 147-148, 946-952
  - passive heatsinks, 146
  - purchasing, 146
  - ratings and calculations, 146-147
- infrared thermometers, 1010
- liquid cooling, 148-149, 941
- maximum heatsink inlet temperatures, 150
- Pentium 4, 104-106
- positive-pressure-ventilation design, 852
- power supply, 913
- preventative maintenance, 1017
- temperature probes, 1010
- thermally advantaged chassis
  - cooling fans, 149
  - maximum heatsink inlet temperatures, 150
  - processor ducts, 151
  - specifications, 150-151
- troubleshooting, 1030

heatsinks, 143, 941
- active heatsinks, 143-145
- boutique heatsinks, 146
- heatsink clips, 143
- installation, 147-148, 946-952
- maximum heatsink inlet temperatures, 150
- passive heatsinks, 146
- purchasing, 146
- ratings and calculations, 146-147

Heaven DX11 benchmark utility (UniGine), 647

help. *See* troubleshooting

hemostats, 1002

HERs (hard error rates), 357

Hertz (Hz), 680

Hertz, Heinrich Rudolph, 49

heterogeneous adapters, 668

Heterogeneous Systems Architecture (HSA) APUs, 131-132

Hewlett-Packard 9100A electronic calculator, 20

HFC (hybrid fiber/coax) networks, 776

HFS (Hierarchical File System), 586

hiberfil.sys file, 998

Hibernate (S4) state, 910

Hierarchical File System (HFS), 586

High Definition Multimedia Interface (HDMI), 633-636, 688

high-level formatting, 477, 482

high memory area (HMA), 46

High Sierra file system, 583

High-Speed USB (USB 2.0)
- data rates, 709
- technical details, 705-708

highly parallel instructions, 62

history of computers
- ATA (AT Attachment), 378-380
- Atanasoff-Berry Computer, 10
- CD drives, 526-527
- CDs, 526-527
- chipsets, 181-183
- Colossus, 10
- DVDs, 548
- ENIAC (Electrical Numerical Integrator and Calculator), 10
- flash memory, 507
- floppy drives, 523
- ICs (integrated circuits), 13-14
- importance of, 20
- magnetic storage, 439
- microprocessors, 33-34
- Moore's Law, 16-17
- mouse, 757-758
- PCs (personal computers)
  - Apple I, 15
  - Apple II, 15
  - IBM Model 5100, 14
  - IBM Model 5150, 15

    - IBM PCs, 15-16
    - MITS Altair 8800 kit, 14
  - processors, 29-33
  - recent developments, 17-18
  - sound cards, 682
  - timeline, 5-9
  - transistors, 11-13
  - UNIVAC (Universal Automatic Computer), 10
  - vacuum tubes, 11

Hitachi
  - Global Storage Technologies, 463
  - Super-IPS (in-place switching), 662

hits (cache), 330

HLF. *See* low-level formatting

HMA (high memory area), 46

Hoff, Ted, 30

hold-up time (power supply), 897

Hollerith, Herman, 439

home networks. *See* networks

home servers, optimizing system for, 932-933

home theater, optimizing system for, 932

HomePlug 1.0, 839

HomePlug AV, 840

HomePlug Powerline Alliance, 839

HomePNA, 838-839

homogeneous adapters, 668

horizontal frequency, 657

host adapters. *See* adapters

host-based audio signal processing, 688

Host Burn-in Mode setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 299

Host Burn-in Mode Type setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 299

host interface adapters. *See* ATA (AT Attachment); SCSI (small computer system interface)

host protected areas (HPAs), 287-289, 384, 412-413

Host Spread Spectrum setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 299

Host Wire Adapter (HWA), 717

hot spots, 810

hot-plugging, 713, 725-728

hot-swappable drives, 727

HP (Hewlett-Packard)
  - KittyHawk, 466
  - LightScribe, 602

HPAs (host protected areas), 287-289, 384, 412-413

HPET setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 300

HPUSBDisk.exe, 281

HSA (Heterogeneous Systems Architecture) APUs, 131-132

HT (Hyper-Threading) Technology, 65-66

hubs, 704-706, 828-829
  - AHA (accelerated hub architecture), 188
  - chipset hub architecture, 187-188
  - hub clamping area
    - CDs, 530
    - DVDs, 550
  - ICH (I/O Controller Hub), 187
  - MCH (Memory Controller Hub), 187

HughesNet, 785

HWA (Host Wire Adapter), 717

HWiNFO, 356, 411

HWMonitor, 991

hybrid fiber/coax (HFC) networks, 776

hybrid mice, 762

hybrid processors
  - AMD-K6, 64, 116-117
  - NexGen Nx586, 114-116

hydrogenated amorphour silicon (a-Si), 661

Hyper Page mode memory, 336-337

Hyper-Threading Technology (HT), 65-66

Hyper-Threading Technology setting (BIOS main menu), 295

HyperStreaming, 189

Hypertech, 272

HyperTransport bus, 188

Hz (Hertz), 680

I

IA-32 mode, 45

IA-32 virtual real mode, 45-46

IA-32e 64-bit extension mode, 46-48

IA-64 processors, 35

IBM
  - 305 RAMAC (Random Access Method of Accounting and Control), 439
  - 650 magnetic drum calculator, 6
  - 701 Defense Calculator, 439
  - 726 Tape Unit, 439
  - 8088 processors, 89-90
  - BIOS error messages, 320-321
  - development of magnetic storage, 439
  - Enhanced 101-key keyboard, 739-740
  - history of IBM PCs, 15-16
  - IBM BIOS, 984-989
  - MicroDrive, 466
  - Model 5100 PC, 14
  - Model 5150 PC, 15
  - PC-AT (PC Advanced Technology), 7
  - PS/2 mouse port, 761
  - TrackPoint, 765-768

IBM BIOS, 984-989

IBM clones, 19, 90

IBM compatibles, 19

ICH (I/O Controller Hub), 187

ICs (integrated circuits), 13-14

ID error detection (IED) codes, 553

ID sector field, 470

IDE (Integrated Drive Electronics). ***See*** **ATA (AT Attachment)**

IDENTIFY DRIVE command (ATA), 410

IDs, PnP (Plug and Play) device IDs, 318

IEC (International Electrotechnical Commission), 455, 899

IED (ID error detection) codes, 553

IEEE (Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers)
- 802.11a standard, 810
- 802.11ac standard, 812
- 802.11b standard, 808-810
- 802.11g standard, 810-811
- 802.11n standard, 811-812
- 1284 standard, 735-736
- 1394 standard
  - 1394 standard, 235, 599, 718
  - 1394a standard, 718-719
  - 1394b S3200 standard, 721
  - 1394b standard, 719-720
  - compared to USB, 722-725
  - explained, 718
  - hot-plugging, 725-728
  - speed of, 723-725

iFeel Mouse (Logitech), 759

IFLASH.EXE, 281

IHS Standards Store, 381

i.LINK. ***See*** **FireWire**

image abstractions, 644

image mastering application program interface (IMAPI), 574

images. ***See*** **graphics**

IMAPI (image mastering application program interface), 574

ImgBurn, 280-281, 284

Inactivity Timer setting (Power menu), 313

InCD Reader (Nero AG Software), 585

inductive power, 898

industry control
- of PC hardware, 23-26
- of PC software, 20-23
- white-box systems, 26

Industry Standard Architecture. ***See*** **ISA buses**

infrared data front panel connector pinout, 237

infrared (IR) input devices, 771

infrared thermometers, 916, 1010

infrastructure mode, 831

initial program load (IPL) ROM, 274

Innoventions, 369

in-plane switching (IPS), 662

input devices
- choosing, 939
- keyboards, 739
  - 103/104-key, 740-742
  - buckling spring keyboards, 746
  - buying tips, 756-757
  - cleaning, 755-756, 1016
  - connectors, 751-755
  - DSK (Dvorak Simplified Keyboard), 754
  - Enhanced 101-key, 739-740
  - ergonomic, 754
  - international layouts, 750-751
  - keyboard interface, 747-748
  - key matrix, 747
  - key numbers, 749-750
  - keyswitch design, 742-746
  - scan codes, 749-750
  - skins, 756
  - touch keyboards, 747
  - troubleshooting, 754-755
  - typematic functions, 749
  - USB (Universal Serial Bus), 753-754
- mice
  - ball-driven mouse, 758-759
  - buttons, 758
  - cleaning, 765, 1016
  - components, 758
  - history of, 757-758
  - hybrid mice, 762
  - manufacturers, 758
  - optical mouse, 759-760
  - PS/2 mouse port, 761
  - scroll wheels, 762-763
  - sensitivity, 758
  - serial interfaces, 760-761
  - touch-sensitive mice, 763
  - troubleshooting, 764-765
  - USB (Universal Serial Bus), 762
- touch pads, 768-769
- touchscreen technology, 770-771
- trackballs, 758-770
- TrackPoint, 765-768
- wireless
  - Bluetooth, 772
  - IR (infrared), 771
  - power management, 772
  - proprietary radio frequency, 771
  - troubleshooting, 773

input range (power supply), 897

inSSIDer, 1020

installation
  cables, 969
  CD/DVD firmware, 608
  DSL (digital subscriber line), 781-782
  expansion cards, 969
  HDDs (hard disk drives), 963-965
  heatsinks, 147-148, 946-952
  memory modules, 952
  motherboard cables, 961-962
  motherboards, 953-956
  NICs (network interface cards), 840-841
  operating systems, 971-972
  power supply, 958-961
  processors, 946-952
  RAM (random access memory), 366-367
  SSDs (solid state drives), 963-965
  troubleshooting, 972-973
  video adapters, 967-968
Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers. *See* IEEE
instruction sets (math coprocessors), 87
INT13h
  BIOS CHS parameter limits, 419
  commands, 418
INTA# interrupts, 257
INTB# interrupts, 257
INTC# interrupts, 257
INTD# interrupts, 257
integral cache, 330
Integral Peripherals 1.8" hard drives, 466
integral power supply AC switches, 868
integrated adapters, 938
integrated audio chipsets, 694
integrated circuits (ICs), 13, 14
Integrated Drive Electronics (IDE). *See* ATA (AT Attachment)
Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN), 787
integrated video/motherboard chipsets, 611
  chipsets with integrated video for 64-bit AMD processors, 614-616
  graphics chip market share, 612
  Intel chipset integrated video, 612-613
  third-party chipsets with integrated video for Intel processors, 614
Integrator Toolkit (Intel), 275
Intel
  "Azalia" HD Audio, 694
  BTX motherboards, 164-167
  chipsets, 183-184
    3x series, 205-208
    4x series, 206-208
    5x series, 208-211
    6x series, 211-213
    7x series, 213-215
    96x series, 204-205
    386/486 chipsets, 190
    915 family, 202-203
    925X family, 203
    945 Express family, 203
    955X, 204
    975X, 204
    82350 chipsets, 190
    hub architecture, 187-188
    integrated video, 612-613
    integrated video/motherboard chipsets, 612
    Intel Extreme Graphics Architecture, 185
    model numbers, 184
    North Bridge, 185-187
    Pentium 4 chipsets, 196-202
    Pentium chipsets, 190-191
    Pentium Pro chipsets, 192-195
    South Bridge, 186-187
    Super I/O chips, 186
  Chipset Identification Utility, 185
  Extreme Graphics Architecture, 185
  hardware industry control, 23-26
  Integrator Toolkit, 275
  Processor Frequency ID Utility, 138
  Processor Identification Utility, 138
  processors
    286, 90
    386, 91-92
    486, 92-93
    4004, 30
    8085, 31
    8086, 32, 89
    8088, 31-32, 89-90
    Celeron, 96, 100-101
    code names, 88-89
    Core 2, 108-110
    development of, 30-34
    Intel Core i, 110
    Intel Atom, 115
    Itanium, 35
    Ivy Bridge architecture, 114-115
    Nehalem architecture, 110-113
    overclocking, 142
    Sandy Bridge architecture, 113-114
    Pentium, 93-96
    Pentium II, 96-99
    Pentium III, 96-100
    Pentium 4, 101-106
    Pentium 4 Extreme Edition, 104

    - Pentium D, 106-107
    - Pentium Extreme Edition, 106-107
    - Pentium Pro, 96-97
    - specifications, 35-38
  - RTS2011LC cooling system, 149
  - Thunderbolt Technology, 728-729
- **Intel Chipset Identification Utility, 185**
- **Intel Quick Resume Technology setting (Power menu), 313**
- **Intel RAID Technology setting (Drive Configuration menu), 303**
- **Intel Rapid BIOS Boot setting (Boot menu), 314**
- **Intel VT-D, 69**
- **Intel VT-x, 69**
- **Intel-compatible processors**
  - AMD Athlon, 117-118
  - AMD Athlon MP, 120
  - AMD Athlon XP, 118-119
  - AMD Duron, 118
  - AMD K5, 96
  - AMD K6, 64, 116-117
  - AMD Sempron, 124
  - NexGen Nx586, 114-116
- **IntelliMouse Explorer, 759**
- **interference**
  - RFI (radio-frequency interference), 1019
  - speakers, 699
- **interlaced mode, 659**
- **interleave, 336, 504**
- **internal cache, 330**
- **internal Level 1 cache. *See* Level 1 cache**
- **internal Level 2 cache. *See* Level 2 cache**
- **internal registers, 44**
- **International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC), 455, 899**
- **international keyboard layouts, 750, 751**
- **International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 9660 standard, 583-584**
- **Internet connections, 795-796**
  - broadband technology
    - CATV (cable TV), 776-779
    - cellular broadband, 783-784
    - comparison of access types, 789
    - DSL (digital subscriber line), 779-783
    - explained, 775-776
    - ISDN (Integrated Services Digital Network), 787
    - leased lines, 788
    - satellite broadband, 784-787
    - service interruptions, 795
    - speeds, 789
    - status LEDs, 797
    - wireless broadband, 783
  - dialup modems
    - 56Kbps modems, 791-794
    - asynchronous versus synchronous communications, 790
    - data bits, 791
    - explained, 790-791
    - parity, 791
    - stop bits, 791
  - routers, 796
  - security
    - explained, 794-795
    - routers, 796
    - service interruptions, 795
    - shared connections, 795-796
- **Internet Protocol (IP), 836**
- **Internetwork Packet Exchange (IPX), 837**
- **interpolation, 535**
- **Interrupt (for the Parallel Port) setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 301**
- **Interrupt (for the Serial Port) setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 301**
- **interrupt request channels. *See* IRQs**
- **interrupt sharing, 255**
- **intranets, 801**
- **Invalid partition table (error message), 323**
- **IOAPIC Enable setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 300**
- **I/O buses. *See* buses**
- **I/O Controller Hub (ICH), 187**
- **IOH (I/O Hub), 81**
- **ion bombardment, 11**
- **IP (Internet Protocol), 836**
- **IPL (initial program load) ROM, 274**
- **IPS (in-plane switching), 662**
- **IPX (Internetwork Packet Exchange), 837**
- **IR (infrared) input devices, 771**
- **iron oxide**
  - in hard disks, 441
  - in recording media, 484
- **IRQs (interrupt request channels), 254**
  - 8-bit ISA bus interrupts, 255
  - 16-bit ISA/EISA/MCA interrupts, 256-257
  - Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC), 258
  - conflicts, 259
  - edge-triggered interrupt sensing, 255
  - interrupt sharing, 255
  - IRQ sharing, 258
  - maskable interrupts, 255
  - PCI interrupts, 257-258
  - PCI IRQ Steering, 255

IRs (infrared thermometers), 1010

ISA Enable Bit setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 300

ISA (Industry Standard Architecture) buses, 245-246, 255-256

ISDN (Integrated Services Digital Network), 787

ISO (International Organization for Standardization) 9660 standard, 583-584

IsoBuster, 586

isolating memory defects, 372-374

Itanium processors (Intel), 35

ITU (International Telecommunication Union)
  V.90 standard, 793
  V.92 standard, 793-794

ITX motherboards, 176-177

Ivy Bridge architecture (Core i), 114-115, 142

Iwasaki, Shun-ichi, 459

J

JBOD (Just a Bunch of Disks), 434

JEDEC (Joint Electron Device Engineering Council), 331-332, 510

jitter, 704

Jobs, Steve, 7, 15, 757

Joint Electron Device Engineering Council (JEDEC), 331-332

Joliet file system, 584-585

Jscreenfix, 676

jumper settings for ATA (AT Attachment) drives, 394

Just a Bunch of Disks (JBOD), 434

K

K5 processors (AMD), 96

K6 processors (AMD), 64, 116-117

K10 (Phenom) processors, 126-128

K11. *See* Bulldozer FX processors

K56flex chipsets, 793

Katmai New Instructions (KNI), 63

key matrix, 747

key numbers (keyboards), 749-750

keyboard controller chips, upgrading, 277

Keyboard error or no keyboard is present (error message), 980

Keyboard is locked out–Unlock the key (error message), 980

Keyboard Select setting (Power menu), 313

keyboards, 739
  104-key, 740-742
  buckling spring keyboards, 746
  buying tips, 756-757
  choosing, 939
  cleaning, 755-756
  cleaning procedures, 1016
  connectors, 751-755
  controller chips, upgrading, 277
  definition of, 28
  DSK (Dvorak Simplified Keyboard), 754
  Enhanced 101-key, 739-740
  ergonomic, 754
  international layouts, 750-751
  key matrix, 747
  key numbers, 749-750
  keyboard interface, 747-748
  keystrokes, bouncing/debouncing, 747
  keyswitches
    capacitive, 746
    cleaning, 744
    foam element, 743-744
    membrane, 744-745
    pure mechanical, 742-743
    rubber dome, 744
    troubleshooting, 755
  scan codes, 749-750
  skins, 756
  touch keyboards, 747
  troubleshooting, 754, 1027
    connectors, 755
    defective cables, 754-755
    stuck keyswitches, 755
  typematic functions, 749
  USB (Universal Serial Bus), 753-754
  wireless
    Bluetooth, 772
    IR (infrared), 771
    power management, 772
    proprietary radio frequency, 771
    troubleshooting, 773

keychain flash memory devices, 507

keylock connectors, 237

keystrokes, bouncing/debouncing, 747

keyswitches
  capacitive, 746
  cleaning, 744
  foam element, 743-744
  membrane, 744-745
  pure mechanical, 742-743
  rubber dome, 744
  troubleshooting, 755

KeyTronicEMS, 744-745

Kilby, Jack, 6, 13

kilovolt-amperes-reactive (KVAR), 899
Kinesis mechanical-switch keyboards, 743
KittyHawk, 466
Klamath, 97
K-Lite Codec Pack, 581
KNI (Katmai New Instructions), 63
known-good spare troubleshooting technique, 1022
KVAR (kilovolt-amperes-reactive), 899

L

L2 Cache RAM setting (BIOS main menu), 295
L2 cache. *See* Level 2 cache
L-CHS parameters, 421
Labelflash, 602
Lakeport chipsets (Intel), 203
Lancaster, Don, 7
lands, 79
- CDs, 527-529
- DVDs, 549

LANs (local area networks), 800
Larson, Earl R., 10
Laser Beam Recorder (LBR), 527
lasers (CD drives), 529
latency, 335, 503
layered architecture, 265-266
Layer Jump Recording (LJR), 563
layout (memory), 326
lazy write, 725-726
LBA (logical block address) addressing
- 137GB barrier and beyond, 429-430
- CHS/LBA conversions, 417-418
- compared to CHS (cylinder head sector), 416-417
- LBA-assist translation, 425-427

LBR (Laser Beam Recorder), 527
LCC (leadless chip carrier) packaging, 79
LCD (liquid crystal display) monitors. *See also* video display interfaces
- active-matrix displays, 661-662
- advantages of, 662
- bad pixels, 675-676
- dead pixels, 675
- how it works, 661
- lack of screen flicker, 659
- projectors, 666
- selection criteria, 662-663
- stuck pixels, 675

lead-in zone
- CDs, 531
- DVDs, 550

leadless chip carrier (LCC) packaging, 79
lead-out zone
- CDs, 531
- DVDs, 550

leased lines, 788
LED monitors
- backlit technology, 663
- connectors, 237
- lack of screen flicker, 659

legacy audio support, 685-686
Legacy Front Panel Audio setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 301
Legacy IDE Channels setting (Drive Configuration menu), 303
legacy support
- ports, 703, 937
- power management, 907
- USB, 748

legal issues
- copyright protection, 21
- licensing
  - Mac OS X, 23
  - MS-DOS, 22
  - Windows 8, 930
- patents, 21

Lenovo, POST display error codes, 987-989
Level 1 cache, 54, 330
- cache operation, 54-56
- importance of, 54
- Pentium-MMX improvements, 62

Level 2 cache, 56-59, 330
Level 3 cache, 56, 331
level-sensitive interrupts, 257
levels (RAID), 434-436
Lexar
- Memory Stick Pro, 511
- Memory Stick Pro Duo, 511

Lexmark, 746
LFX12V power supply, 863
licensing
- Mac OS X, 23
- MS-DOS, 22
- Windows 8, 930

LIF (low insertion force) sockets, 78
Light Peak. *See* Thunderbolt Technology
LightScribe, 602
Limit CPUID MaxVal setting (Boot Configuration menu), 298
linear power supply, 893-894
linear voice-coil actuators, 488-489
line conditioners, 922
line in sound card connectors, 687
line out sound card connectors, 687

line regulation (power supply), 898
Link Layer Topology Discoverer (LLTD) responder, 843
Link Stability Algorithm setting (PCI Express Configuration menu), 297
Linux
  - ALSA (advanced Linux sound architecture), 693
  - drive limitations, 431

liquid cooling, 148-149, 941
lithium coin cell batteries, 1003
LJR (Layer Jump Recording), 563
LLF. *See* low-level formatting
LLTD (Link Layer Topology Discoverer) responder, 843
Load Custom Defaults command (BIOS Exit menu), 316
Load Optimal Defaults command (BIOS Exit menu), 316
load regulation (power supply), 898
loading mechanisms (CD/DVD drives), 599-600
loads (power supply), 894-895
  - apparent power, 899
  - inductive, 898
  - load regulation, 898
  - maximum load current, 898
  - minimum load current, 898
  - nonlinear, 899
  - resistive, 898
  - working power, 899

load/unload head mechanism, 468
local area networks (LANs), 800
local buses, 246-247
  - PCI. *See* PCI buses
  - VESA local bus, 247

locations for serial ports, 730-733
locked systems, troubleshooting, 1030-1034
logical block address. *See* LBA addressing
logical formatting. *See* high-level formatting
logical mapping (memory), 326
logical memory layout, 374-376
logical ring topology, 826
logic boards, 496-497
logic probes, 1007-1008
Logitech mice, 758-759
loopback connector, 1005
Lowest System Fan Speed setting (Fan Control Configuration menu), 309
low insertion force (LIF) sockets, 78
low profile form factor (LFX12V) power supply, 863
low volume, troubleshooting, 695-696
low-level formatting, 477-478
  - standard recording, 478
  - ZBR (zoned-bit recording), 478-480

low-pass filters, 780
LPX motherboards, 160-161, 870-872
lubricants, 1013

M

MAC addresses, 814
Mac OS X, 23
Macrovision SafeAudio, 589
magnetic fields, 441-442
magnetic flux, 442
magnetic storage
  - areal density, 456-458
  - bit cells (transition cells), 442
  - capacity measurements, 455-456
  - disk/tape material, 441
  - electromagnetism, 440
  - encoding schemes
    - comparison of, 453-454
    - explained, 450-451
    - FM (Frequency Modulation), 451
    - MFM (Modified Frequency Modulation), 442, 451-452
    - RLL (Run Length Limited), 442, 452-453
  - flux, 442
  - head sliders, 448-450
  - history of, 439
  - magnetic fields, 441-442
  - overview, 439
  - PMR (perpendicular magnetic recording), 458-460
  - PRML (Partial-Response, Maximum-Likelihood), 455
  - read process, 442-443
  - read/write heads, 440, 443-444
    - ferrite, 444
    - GMR (giant magneto-resistive), 446-447
    - MIG (Metal-In-Gap), 444
    - MR (magneto-resistive), 445-446
    - TF (thin film), 444-445
  - write process, 442-443

magneto-resistive (MR) heads, 445-446
main boards. *See* motherboards
main memory. *See* RAM (random access memory)
main menu (BIOS Setup), 294-295
maintenance. *See* care and maintenance
Maintenance menu (BIOS Setup), 293-294
Make codes, 749
managed switches, 828
MANs (metropolitan area networks), 800

manufacturer-supplied diagnostic software, 975

manufacturing

- CDs, 527-529
- manufacturing tests, 319
- processors
  - .09 micron manufacturing, 72
  - .13 micron manufacturing, 71
  - bonding, 73
  - dies, 71
  - doping, 70
  - metallization layers, 71
  - photolithography, 70-71
  - processor remarking, 74
  - process/wafer size transitions, 73
  - silicon, 69
  - silicon on insulator (SOI), 71
  - steppers, 71
  - test process, 74
  - wafers, 70-72
  - yields, 73

mapping

- MIP mapping, 644
- texture mapping, 645

Mark DMI Events As Read setting (Event Logging menu), 307

mask ROM (read-only memory), 270

maskable interrupts, 255

mass-producing CDs, 527-529

master development (CDs), 527

master drives (ATA), 393

master position (ATA), 385

master separation (CDs), 528

Masuoka, Fujio, 507

Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), 1014

math coprocessors

- Pentium processors, 95
- processors, 87

matrix math extensions (MMX), 62-63

Mauchly, John W., 6, 10, 20

Maximum Capacity setting (Drive Configuration menu), 303

maximum load current (power supply), 898

MBOA-SIG (Multiband OFDM Alliance Special Interest Group), 716

MBR boot error messages, 322-323

- Error loading operating system, 323-324
- Invalid partition table, 323
- Missing operating system, 324

MCA (microchannel architecture) buses, 246, 256

MCH (Memory Controller Hub), 187, 935

MCH Voltage Override setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 300

MCM (multichip module), 97

Mean Time Between Failures (MTBF), 504, 897

Mean Time To Failure (MTTF), 897

measuring voltage, 915-916

mechanical keyswitches

- capacitive, 746
- foam element, 743-744
- membrane, 744-745
- pure mechanical, 742-743
- rubber dome, 744
- troubleshooting, 755

media, recording media, 484

- AFC (antiferromagnetically coupled), 485
- media color, 541-542
- layers, 540-541
- oxide, 484
- speed ratings, 543
- thin-film, 484-485

MediaGX, 612

megahertz (MHz), 36, 332

membrane keyswitches, 744-745

MemCor, 484

memory. *See* flash memory; RAM (random access memory)

Memory Configuration menu (BIOS Setup), 297-298

Memory Controller Hub (MCH), 187, 935

Memory Frequency setting (Memory Configuration menu), 297

Memory Mode setting (Memory Configuration menu), 297

Memory Stick, 510

Memory Stick Micro, 511

Memory Stick Pro, 511

Memory Stick Pro Duo, 511

Memory Stick Pro XC, 511

Memory Test (error message), 980

memory testers, 1008-1009

Memory test fail (error message), 980

Memtest86, 369, 1009

merge bits, 537

merged MR (magneto-resistive) heads, 446

messages, error. *See* error messages

Metal-In-Gap (MIG) heads, 444

metalization (CDs), 528

metallization layers (processors), 71

Metal Oxide Semiconductor Field Effect Transistors (MOSFETs), 11-12

metal-oxide varistors (MOV), 921

Metcalfe, Robert, 6
metropolitan area networks (MANs), 800
mezzanine buses. *See* PCI (Peripheral Connect Interface) buses
M-Flash, 279
MFM (Modified Frequency Modulation), 442, 451-452
MHz (megahertz), 36, 332
mice
  ball-driven mouse, 758-759
  buttons, 758
  choosing, 939
  cleaning, 765, 1016
  components, 758
  definition of, 28
  history of, 757-758
  hybrid mice, 762
  manufacturers, 758
  optical mouse, 759-760
  PS/2 mouse port, 761
  scroll wheels, 762-763
  sensitivity, 758
  serial interfaces, 760-761
  touch-sensitive mice, 763
  troubleshooting, 764-765
  USB (Universal Serial Bus), 762
  wireless
    Bluetooth, 772
    IR (infrared), 771
    power management, 772
    proprietary radio frequency, 771
    troubleshooting, 773
Micro A/B connectors (USB), 712
Micro Instrumentation and Telemetry Systems, 14
micro-AT motherboards, 159
microATX motherboards, 172-174
microchannel architecture (MCA) buses, 246
microcode, reprogrammable, 88
Microcode Revision setting (BIOS Maintenance menu), 294
MicroDrive, 466
microphone in connectors, 687
microphones, 700-701
microprocessors. *See* specific processors (for example, Pentium)
Micro-Scope, 990
MicroSD, 510
Microsoft
  DirectX, 646-647
  mice, 758
    IntelliMouse Explorer, 759
    Microsoft Explorer Touch Mouse, 763-764
  MS-DOS
    free and open-source DOS versions, 22
    licensing, 22
  software industry control, 20-23
  Windows Memory Diagnostic, 369, 1009
Microsoft Plug and Play ID web page, 318
MIDI (Musical Instrument Digital Interface)
  in/out sound card connectors, 688
  sound card support, 691
MIDI Out Setter, 692
MIG (Metal-In-Gap) heads, 444
MIMO (multiple input, multiple output), 811
Mini A/B connectors (USB), 712
mini-AT motherboards, 159
Mini-ATX motherboards, 169
Mini-DTX motherboards, 176
Mini-ITX motherboards, 176-177
mini-LPX motherboards, 160-161
minimum load current (power supply), 898
mini-SATA (mSATA), 403-404
MiniSD, 510
mini-tower cases, 933
Mini-Winchester sliders, 448
MIO (multipurpose I/O), 648
mirroring disks, 434-435
misses (cache), 330
Missing operating system (error message), 324, 1031
MITS, Inc.
  Altair, 14, 19
  history of, 14
MLC (multilevel cell), 513-514
MMC (MultiMediaCard), 510
MMCA (MultiMediaCard Association), 510
MMDevice (Multimedia Devices) API, 683
MMX (multimedia extensions), 62-63, 87
Model 5100 PC, 14
Model 5150 PC, 15
model numbers (Intel), 184
Modem-on-Hold feature, 793-794
modems
  56Kbps modems, 791
    chipsets, 792
    limitations, 792
    Modem-on-Hold feature, 793-794
    PCM Upstream feature, 794
    speed, 792
    V.90 standard, 793
    V.92 standard, 793-794
  asynchronous versus synchronous communications, 790
  cable modems, 776-778
  data bits, 791
  definition of, 28
  explained, 790-791
  parity, 791

- stop bits, 791
- troubleshooting, 1026-1027

modes
- PATA DMA (direct memory access) transfer modes, 396-397
- PATA PIO (Programmed I/O) transfer modes, 396
- processor modes
  - IA-32 mode, 45
  - IA-32 virtual real mode, 45-46
  - IA-32e 64-bit extension mode, 46-48
  - real mode, 44-45

Modified Frequency Modulation (MFM), 442, 451-452

modular cables, 919

modular power supplies, 958

modules (memory)
- capacities, 349-351
- determining module size/features, 354-355
- DIMMs (dual inline memory modules), 346
  - 168-pin SDRAM DIMM, 348
  - DDR DIMM, 348, 353
  - DDR2 DIMM, 348, 353
  - DDR3 DIMM, 349, 353
  - purchasing, 365
  - SDR DIMMs, 352
- dual rank, 346
- ECC (error correcting code), 360-361
- hard fails, 357
- installation, 366-367
- memory banks, 351, 356-357
- parity checking, 359-360
- purchasing
  - DIMMs, 365
  - obsolete memory, 366
  - suppliers, 364-365
- registered modules, 351-352
- replacing with higher-capacity versions, 366
- RIMMs (Rambus inline memory modules), 346, 349
- SIMMs (single inline memory modules), 346
  - 30-pin SIMM, 347
  - 72-pin SIMM, 347
  - purchasing, 366
- single rank, 346
- soft errors, 357-359
- speeds, 357
- troubleshooting, 368-372
  - with diagnostic software, 368-369
  - memory defect isolation procedures, 372-374
  - with POST (Power On Self Test), 368
  - step-by-step process, 370-372
  - types of errors, 370
- upgrading, 361-364

Molex Mini-Fit Jr. power connectors (ATX), 874-875

monitors. *See also* display interfaces; video adapters; **video display interface**
- adjusting, 674-675
- aspect ratio, 652-653
- bad pixels, 675-676
- care and maintenance, 672-673
- choosing, 668-669
- CRT (cathode ray tube)
  - dot pitch, 664
  - electron guns, 663
  - persistence, 664
  - raster, 665
  - refresh rates, 657-659, 664-665
  - shadow masks, 664
  - slotted masks, 664
- dead pixels, 675
- definition of, 28
- display size, 650
- DLP projectors, 667
- horizontal frequency, 657
- image brightness and contrast, 659-660
- interlaced versus noninterlaced modes, 659
- LCD (liquid crystal display)
  - active-matrix displays, 661-662
  - advantages of, 662
  - how it works, 661
  - lack of screen flicker, 659
  - projectors, 666
  - selection criteria, 662-663
- LED
  - backlit technology, 663
  - lack of screen flicker, 659
- multiple monitors
  - Dualview, 667
  - heterogeneous adapters, 668
  - homogeneous adapters, 668
- overview, 609, 650
- pixels, 653-657
- plasma displays, 665
- repairing, 677
- resolution, 651-652
- stuck pixels, 675
- testing, 671-674
- touchscreen technology, 770-771
- troubleshooting, 676-677, 1027-1028
- vertical frequency, 657

mono in connectors, 687

monophonic sound cards, 691

Moore, Gordon, 16-17, 29-30

Moore's Law, 16-17

Morris, Robert, 7

MOSFETs (Metal Oxide Semiconductor Field Effect Transistors), 11-12

MOS Technologies 6502 processor, 32

motherboards. *See also* BIOS (basic input/output system); buses; chipsets; PSUs (power supply units)

- AT, 157-158, 870-872
- ATX, 167-168
  - color coding, 172
  - identifying, 169
  - ports, 170
  - power supply, 852-854
  - specification, 172
- Baby-AT, 158-159
- BTX, 164-167
- cables, 961-962
- connectors, 228, 232-234
  - alternative single-row front panel connector pinouts, 231
  - AMR (Audio Modem Riser), 240
  - ATAPI-style line-in connectors, 238
  - battery connector, 237
  - CD audio connectors, 238
  - chassis intrusion connectors, 237
  - CNR (Communications and Networking Riser), 240
  - front panel audio connector pinout, 236
  - front panel switch/LED connector pinouts, 230
  - IEEE 1394 (FireWire/i.LINK) connector pinout, 235
  - infrared data front panel connector pinout, 237
  - LED and keylock connectors, 237
  - microprocessor fan power connectors, 239
  - power LED indications, 231
  - speaker connectors, 237
  - telephony connectors, 238
  - USB 1.1/2.0 USB header connector pinout, 233
  - USB 3.0 header connector pinout, 234-235
  - Wake on LAN connectors, 238
  - Wake on Ring connectors, 238
- definition of, 28
- Desktop Form Factors website, 935
- documentation, 262
- DTX, 176
- explained, 935
- extended ATX, 172
- FlexATX, 174-175
- industry control of, 23
- integrated adapters, 938
- ITX, 176-177
- LPX, 160-161, 870-872
- memory, 936-937
  - DDR SDRAM (double data rate SDRAM), 936
  - DIMMs (dual inline memory modules), 936
  - installation, 952
- microATX, 172-174
- Mini-ATX, 169
- Mini-DTX, 176
- Mini-ITX, 176-177
- mounting in case, 953-956
- NLX motherboards, 162-163
- PC motherboards, 156-157
- ports, 761, 937-938
- processor sockets/slots, 178-181
- proprietary designs, 177
- selection criteria, 260-262
- summary of form factors, 155-156
- Super I/O chips, 228
- troubleshooting, 1034
- UEFI (Unified Extensible Firmware Interface), 936
- voltage regulators, 847
- WTX, 164
- XT, 156-157

mothers (CDs), 528

Motion Pictures Experts Group (MPEG) standard, 693

motors

- spindle motors, 495-496
- stepper motors, 487-488

mounting motherboards, 953-956

Mount Rainier standard, 575, 586-587

mouse devices. *See* mice

Mouser Electronics, 1000

MOVs (metal-oxide varistors), 921

MPEG (Motion Pictures Experts Group) standard, 693

MPEG-2 codecs, 581

MPEG-2 decoders, 581

MR (magneto-resistive) heads, 445-446

mSATA (mini-SATA), 403-404

MSAUs (multistation access units), 826

MS-DOS. *See* DOS operating system

MSDOS.SYS file, 996

MSDS (Material Safety Data Sheets), 1014

msinfo32.exe, 477

MTBF (Mean Time Between Failures), 504, 897

MTTF (Mean Time To Failure), 897

MultiAudio specification, 547

Multiband OFDM Alliance Special Interest Group (MBOA-SIG), 716

multichip module (MCM), 97

multicore processors, 66-68
- AMD Athlon 64 X2, 125-126
- AMD K10, 126-128
- AMD 64 FX, 125-126
- Intel Core 2, 108-110
- Intel Core i
  - Intel Atom, 115
  - Ivy Bridge architecture, 114-115
  - Nehalem architecture, 110-113
  - overclocking, 142
  - Sandy Bridge architecture, 113-114
- Intel Pentium D, 106-107
- Pentium Extreme Edition, 106-107

multidomain vertical alignment (MVA), 662

multiformat rewritable DVD drives, 566-567

multilevel cell (MLC), 513-514

multimedia. *See also* monitors; video adapters
- 3D graphics accelerators. *See* 3D graphics accelerators
- MMX (multimedia extensions), 62-63
- SSE (Streaming SIMD Extensions), 63-64

MultiMediaCard Association (MMCA), 510

MultiMediaCard (MMC), 510

Multimedia CD, 548

Multimedia Devices (MMDevice) API, 683

multimedia extensions (MMX), 62-63, 87

multimeters, 1002, 1005-1007

MultiPlay specification, 547

multiple branch prediction, 64

multiple input, multiple output (MIMO), 811

multiple monitors
- Dualview, 667
- heterogeneous adapters, 668
- homogeneous adapters, 668
- overview, 667

multipurpose I/O (MIO), 648

MultiRead specifications, 545-547

multisession recording (CDs)
- DAO (Disc-at-Once) recording, 573
- packet writing, 573-575
- Track-at-Once, 573

multistation access units (MSAUs), 826

multithreaded rendering (DirectX), 647

multi-touch digitizing pad, 939

multi-touch integrated pad, 939

multiword DMA (direct memory access), 397

municipal area networks (MANs), 800

music. *See* audio

MuTIOL architecture, 189

MVA (multidomain vertical alignment), 662

Mylar, 441

N

NAND (Not AND) flash memory, 508

nanoseconds, 332

Napier, John, 5

Napier's Bones, 5

National Committee on Information Technology Standards (NCITS), 380

National Institute for Standards and Technology (NIST), 415

National Television System Committee (NTSC), 641

NCITS (National Committee on Information Technology Standards), 380

Near Field Communication (NFC), 800

NEAT (New Enhanced AT) CS8221 chipset, 182

needle-nose pliers, 1002

negative DC voltages, 847-848

negative inertia, 768

Nehalem architecture (Core i), 110-113

Nero AG Software, InCD Reader, 585

nested RAID levels, 435

NetBEUI (NetBIOS Extended User Interface), 837

NetBurst microarchitecture, 103

Network and Sharing Center, 843-844

network interface adapters, 989

network interface cards. *See* NICs

networks
- ad hoc mode, 831
- architecture summary, 804-805
- benefits of, 800
- Bluetooth, 813-814
- broadband technology
  - CATV (cable TV), 776-779
  - cellular broadband, 783-784
  - comparison of access types, 789
  - DSL (digital subscriber line), 779-783
  - explained, 775-776
  - ISDN (Integrated Services Digital Network), 787
  - leased lines, 788
  - satellite broadband, 784-787
  - service interruptions, 795
  - speeds, 789

- status LEDs, 797
- wireless broadband, 783

cables

- cable distance limitations, 824
- choosing, 842
- grounding loops, 818
- Thicknet, 816-817
- Thinnet, 817
- twisted-pair, 817-824

client/server networks, 802-804

definition of, 799-800

dialup modems

- 56Kbps modems, 791-794
- asynchronous versus synchronous communications, 790
- data bits, 791
- explained, 790-791
- parity, 791
- stop bits, 791

extranets, 801

HFC (hybrid fiber/coax) networks, 776

HomePNA, 838-839

hubs, 828-829

infrastructure mode, 831

Internet, 800

intranets, 801

LANs (local area networks), 800

MANs (metropolitan area networks), 800

minimum requirements, 801

network software configuration, 842-843

NICs (network interface cards)

- bus types, 815
- connectors, 815-816
- costs, 814
- definition of, 28
- full-duplex, 815
- half-duplex, 815
- installation, 840-841
- onboard BIOS, 274
- speed, 815
- testing, 841
- wireless NICs, 832

PANs (personal area networks), 800

peer-to-peer networks, 803-804

powerline networks, 839-840

security, 833-835

shared Internet connections, 795-796

switches, 827-828, 842

- address storing, 828
- compared to hubs, 828-829
- dual-speed, 829
- managed/unmanaged, 828
- placement of, 830-831
- ports, 830
- power-saving features, 829

topologies

- bus topology, 825
- explained, 824-825
- point-to-point topology, 833
- ring topology, 826
- star topology, 827, 833

WANs (wide area networks), 800

Wi-Fi (Wireless Fidelity)

- 802.11a standard, 810
- 802.11ac standard, 812
- 802.11b standard, 808-810
- 802.11g standard, 810-811
- 802.11n standard, 811-812
- access points, 831, 842
- antennas, 832
- bridges, 832
- DHCP support, 835-836
- explained, 807-808
- network speeds, 813
- repeaters, 832
- security, 833-835
- signal boosters, 832
- topologies, 833
- users per access point, 836
- wireless NICs, 832

with Windows, 843-844

wired Ethernet, 805

- 10 Gigabit Ethernet (10GBASE-T), 807
- cables. *See* cables
- explained, 806
- Fast Ethernet, 806
- Gigabit Ethernet, 806-807
- hubs, 828-829
- switches, 827-831, 842

WWANs (wireless wide area networks), 800

Neumann, John von, 6, 10

New Enhanced AT (NEAT) CS8221 chipset, 182

Newark/element14, 1000

NewEgg.com, 935

NexGen Nx586 processors, 114-116

NeXT Computer, 7

NFC (Near Field Communication), 800

NFC Forum, 800

nForce/nForce2 chipsets, 227

Nibble Mode memory, 335-336

nibble mode (parallel ports), 737

NICs (network interface cards), 814

- bus types, 815
- connectors, 815-816
- costs, 814
- definition of, 28
- full-duplex, 815
- half-duplex, 815
- installation, 840-841
- onboard BIOS, 274
- speed, 815
- testing, 841
- wireless NICs, 832

Nirsoft WirelessNetView, 1020
NIST (National Institute for Standards and Technology), 415
nits, 659
NLX motherboards, 162-163
NMOS transistors, 12
Noble, David, 523
No boot device available (error message), 322
NO ROM BASIC -SYSTEM HALTED (error message), 322
No-ID sector format, 472
no-tool cases, 1001
Non Return to Zero (differential NRZ), 401
Non Return to Zero Inverted (NRZI), 705
Non-System disk or disk error (error message), 322
Non-Volatile Memory Express (NVMe), 409
Non-Volatile Memory Host Controller Interface (NVMHCI), 409
noncontact thermometers, 916
noninterlaced mode, 659
nonlinear power, 899
nonvolatile memory, 263
nonvolatile RAM (NRAM). *See* CMOS RAM
nonvolatile storage, 461. *See also* HDDs (hard disk drives)
NOR (Not OR) flash memory, 508
North Bridge chips, 185-187, 935
Norton Ghost (Symantec), 506
Novell NetWare, 431
Noyce, Robert, 6, 13, 29-30
NRZI (Non Return to Zero Inverted), 705
Ntbtlog.txt file, 998
Ntdetect.com, 997
NTFS (Windows NT File System), 480
Ntldr (NT Loader), 997-998
NTSC (National Television System Committee), 641
numbers
  Intel model numbers, 184
  keyboard key numbers, 749-750
  numerical aperture, 568
Numlock setting (Boot Configuration menu), 298
nut drivers, 1000
NVIDIA
  chipsets, 216-217, 227
  ForceWare v81.85, 648
  SLI, 648
NVMe (Non-Volatile Memory Express), 409
NVMHCI (Non-Volatile Memory Host Controller Interface), 409
NVMHCI Workgroup, 409
NVRAM (nonvolatile RAM). *See* CMOS RAM
Nx586 processors (NexGen), 114-116
nylon cable-ties, 1002

O

OCCT, 991
OEMs (original equipment manufacturers), 273, 934
Oersted, Hans Christian, 440
OFDM (orthogonal frequency division multiplexing), 812, 839
OFDM data encoding, 810
offline devices, SPS (standby power supply), 922-923
Off state (APM), 905
"On Computable Numbers" (Turing), 5
Onboard 1394 setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 301
Onboard Audio setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 301
Onboard Chip SATA setting (Drive Configuration menu), 303
Onboard LAN Boot ROM setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 301
Onboard LAN setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 301
Onboard Video Memory Size setting (Video Configuration menu), 307
one-time programmable (OTP) chips, 270
online systems, UPS (uninterruptible power supply), 923-925
onscreen messages (POST), 978
  Award BIOS/Phoenix FirstBIOS, 980-981
  IBM BIOS, 984-987
open sound system (OSS) API, 693
OpenAL, 684
OpenAL Soft, 684
OpenCL, 617
OpenGL, 617, 646
operating range (power supply), 897
operating system diagnostic software, 976, 989-990
operating-system-independent boot process, 992-996, 1024-1025
operating system installation, 971-972
opposite track path (OTP), 556-557
optical mice, 759-760
optical SPDIF out sound card connectors, 688

optical storage
- Blu-ray discs, 567-569, 606
- care and maintenance, 606-607
- CD drives, 526
  - access times, 598
  - bootable CDs, 606
  - booting from floppy disk, 601
  - buffers/cache, 598
  - buffer underruns, 601
  - CAV (constant angular velocity) technology, 593
  - CLV (constant linear velocity) technology, 593-595
  - data transfer rates, 593
  - DMA and Ultra-DMA, 598
  - drive sealing, 600
  - firmware updates, 607-608
  - history of, 526-527
  - interfaces, 598-599
  - laser operation, 529
  - loading mechanisms, 599-600
  - mechanical drive operation, 530
  - Mount Rainier standard, 586-587
  - MultiAudio specification, 547
  - MultiPlay specification, 547
  - MultiRead specifications, 545-547
  - self-cleaning lenses, 600
  - table of CD-ROM drive speeds and transfer rates, 595
  - troubleshooting, 602-605
- CDs
  - audio data information, 533
  - Blue Book standard (CD EXTRA), 576-577
  - bootable CDs, 601-602, 606
  - burning, 541, 600-601
  - capacity, 526, 536-537
  - care and handling, 527
  - CD-DA, 571
  - CD-R, 539-543
  - CD-ROM, 571-572
  - CD-RW, 539, 543-545
  - CD TEXT discs, 534-535
  - construction and technology, 527
  - copy protection, 536, 588-589
  - DRM (digital rights management), 589
  - DualDisc, 578
  - EFM data encoding, 537-539
  - file systems, 582-586
  - form factor, 526
  - For Music Use Only discs, 588
  - frames, 533
  - history of, 526-527
  - hub clamping area, 530
  - Labelflash direct disc labeling system, 602
  - lands, 529
  - lead-in, 531
  - lead-out, 531
  - LightScribe direct disc labeling system, 602
  - mass production, 527-529
  - Mount Rainier standard, 586-587
  - multisession recording, 573-575
  - Orange Book standard, 572
  - PCA (power calibration area), 531
  - Photo CD, 575
  - Picture CD, 576
  - pits, 529
  - PMA (power memory area), 531
  - program area, 531
  - read errors, 535-536
  - ripping, 587-588
  - sampling rates, 534
  - Scarlet Book standard (SA-CD), 577-578
  - sector modes and forms, 572
  - sectors, 533
  - subcode bytes, 534
  - Super Video CDs, 576
  - table of CD formats, 570-571
  - technical parameters, 532
  - tracks, 530-531
  - White Book standard (Video CD), 576
- choosing, 939
- DVD drives
  - access times, 598
  - booting from floppy disk, 601
  - buffers/cache, 598
  - compatibility, 580
  - DMA and Ultra-DMA, 598
  - drive sealing, 600
  - DVD Multi specification, 566-567
  - firmware updates, 607-608
  - interfaces, 598-599
  - loading mechanisms, 599-600
  - MultiAudio specification, 547
  - MultiPlay specification, 547
  - MultiRead specifications, 545-547
  - self-cleaning lenses, 600
  - speed, 595-597
  - troubleshooting, 602-605
- DVDs
  - audio data information, 553-554
  - bootable DVDs, 601-602
  - capacity, 555-558
  - construction and technology, 549-550

copy protection, 589-592
data zone, 550
DIVX (Digital Video Express), 580
DVD drive and media compatibility, 560
DVD Forum, 548
DVD-5, 555
DVD-9, 555
DVD-10, 556
DVD-18, 556
DVD-R, 562-563
DVD+R, 564-566
DVD-RAM, 560-562
DVD-R DL, 563
DVD+R DL, 566
DVD-RW, 563-564
DVD+RW, 564-566
DVD+RW Alliance, 548
DVD-Video, 548
EFM+ data encoding, 558-559
error handling, 554-555
explained, 547-548
frames, 553-554
history of, 548
hub clamping area, 550
Labelflash direct disc labeling system, 602
lead-in zone, 550
lead-out zone, 550
LightScribe direct disc labeling system, 602
OTP (opposite track path) construction, 556-557
playing on PCs, 581
PTP (parallel track path) construction, 556-557
sectors, 553-554
table of DVD formats and standards, 578-580
table of recordable DVD standards, 559
  technical parameters, 551-553
  tracks, 550-551
explained, 525-526
HD-DVD, 569-570
troubleshooting
  disc read failures, 602-605
  disc write failures, 604
  firmware updates, 607-608
  problems burning discs with Windows built-in recording, 605
  slow drive speeds, 604-605

Optical Storage Technology Association (OSTA), 585-586
optimal resolution, 658
optimizing performance. ***See*** **performance**
Orange Book standard, 572
original equipment manufacturers (OEMs), 273
orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM), 812, 839
OS/2 Warp, 431
Osborne, Adam, 7
OSS (open sound system) API, 693
OSTA (Optical Storage Technology Association), 585-586
OSx86 Project, 18, 23
OTP (one-time programmable) chips, 270
OTP (opposite track path), 556-557
outlet testers, 1008
output ratings (power supply), 895-896
overburning CDs, 541
overclocking, 133-134
  CPU voltage settings, 142
  bus speeds and multipliers, 140
  modern PC clocks, 136-138
  pitfalls, 140-142
  quartz crystals, 134-136
  Sandy Bridge and Ivy Bridge processors, 142
  tips and guidelines, 138-139
  unlocking cores, 139-140
overheating. ***See*** **heating/cooling issues**
overloading power supply, 912-913
Override enabled – Defaults loaded (error message), 981
overvoltage protection (power supply), 898
oxide media, 484

P

P8 power supply connectors, 870-872
P9 power supply connectors, 870-872
P-CAV (Partial-CAV) technology, 593
packaging processors
  BBUL (bumpless build-up layer), 75
  FC-PGA (flip-chip pin grid array), 75
  PGA (pin grid array), 75
  SEC (single edge contact), 75
  SPGA (staggered pin grid array), 74
Packet Binary Convolutional Coding (PBCC-22), 810
packets
  ATAPI (AT Attachment Packet Interface), 413
  packet writing, 573-575
PAC (PCI/AGP Controller). ***See*** **North Bridge chips**
Page Mode memory, 335-336
paged memory, 335-336
paging, 335
pairing, 94, 814

PAL (Phase Alternate Line), 641

PanelLink, 629-630

PANs (personal area networks), 800

Paragon GPT Loader, 292, 434

paragraphs (ROM), 268

Parallel ATA. *See* PATA

Parallel Port Mode setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 301

parallel ports, 703-704
- 25-pin parallel port connectors, 734-735
- bidirectional (8-bit) parallel ports, 737
- configuration, 738
- ECP (Enhanced Capabilities) parallel ports, 737-738
- EPP (Enhanced Parallel Port), 737
- explained, 729, 734
- IEEE 1284 standard, 735-736
- standard parallel ports, 736-737

Parallel Port setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 302

parallel track path (PTP), 556-557

parameter translation. *See* translation

PARD (Periodic and Random Deviation), 898

parity
- block data with, 435
- dialup modems, 791
- parity bits, 359
- parity checking, 359-360
- parity inner (PI) bytes, 553
- parity outer (PO) bytes, 553
- striping with, 434

Parkinson, Cyril Northcote, 462

Parkinson's Law (Parkinson), 462

Parted Magic, 477, 481

Partial-CAV (P-CAV) technology, 593

Partial-Response, Maximum-Likelihood (PRML), 455

PARTIES (Protected Area Run Time Interface Extension Services), 288

partitioning hard drives, 480-481
- GPT (GUID Partition Table), 432-434
- HDD partition alignment, 475-477
- sector drive partition alignment, 475-477
- SSD (solid-state drive) partition alignment needs, 515

parts grabbers, 1000, 1011

Pascal, Blaise, 5

passive heatsinks, 146

passive PFC (power factor correction), 899

passive preventative maintenance, 1011
- dust, 1020-1021
- heating and cooling, 1017
- operating environment, 1016
- pollutants, 1020-1021
- power cycling, 1017-1018
- power-line noise, 1018-1019
- RFI (radio-frequency interference), 1019-1020
- static electricity, 1018

PassMark Software, 1005

passwords, 311

PATA (Parallel ATA), 380
- definition of, 377
- DMA (direct memory access) transfer modes, 396-397
- dual-drive configurations, 393-395
- I/O cables, 390-392
- I/O connectors, 387-390
- PIO (Programmed I/O) transfer modes, 396
- signals, 392-393

patents, 21

PBCC-22 (Packet Binary Convolutional Coding), 810

PC Advanced Technology (PC-AT), 7

PC Card, 511

PC Diag Professional Suite, 990

PC 99 Design Guide website, 686

PC133 specification, 337-338

PC-AT (PC Advanced Technology), 7

Pc-Check, 990

PC-Doctor Service Center, 990

PC-Technician, 990

PCA (power calibration area), 531

PCG (Platform Compatibility Guide), 881

PCH (Platform Controller Hub), 935

P-CHS parameters, 421

PCI (Peripheral Connect Interface) buses, 248-251
- adapter cards, 249
- board configurations, 250-251
- bus types, 249
- interrupts, 257
- PCI Express, 251-253
- specifications, 247-248

PCI Burn-in Mode setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 300

PCI buses, 239

PCI Configuration menu (BIOS Setup), 296

PCIe (PCI Express), 251-253, 626

PCIE x16 Link Retrain setting (PCI Express Configuration menu), 297

PCI Express (PCIe), 626

PCI Express Burn-in Mode setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 300
PCI Express bus, 239
PCI Express Configuration menu (BIOS Setup), 296-297
PCI Express x16 Graphics Power connectors, 890-893
PCI Express x16 v2.0, 80
PCI IDE Bus Master setting (Drive Configuration menu), 304
PCI IRQ Steering, 255, 258
PCI Latency Timer setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 300
PCI/VGA Palette Snoop setting (Video Configuration menu), 307
PCM Upstream, 794
PCMCIA (Personal Computer Memory Card International Association), 511
PdaNet, 795
peak inrush current (power supply), 897
peer-to-peer networks, 803-804
PEG Allow > x1 setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 300
PEG Negotiated Width setting (PCI Express Configuration menu), 297
Pentium-compatible processors
- AMD Athlon, 117-118
- AMD Athlon MP, 120
- AMD Athlon XP, 118-119
- AMD Duron, 118
- AMD-K6, 64, 116-117
- AMD Sempron, 124
- NexGen Nx586, 114-116

Pentium processors, 93-96
- BTB (branch target buffer), 95
- chipsets, 190-191
- instruction processing, 95
- math coprocessor, 95
- MMX (multimedia extensions), 62-63
- socket specifications, 75-76
- specifications, 94
- SPGA (staggered pin grid array) packaging, 74
- SSE (Streaming SIMD Extensions), 63-64
- superscalar technology, 94
- twin data pipelines, 94

Pentium D processors, 106-107, 215
Pentium Extreme Edition processors, 106-107
Pentium II processors, 96-99
- chipsets, 192-195
- dynamic execution
  - dataflow analysis, 65
  - multiple branch prediction, 64
  - speculative execution, 65
- SECC (single edge contact cartridge) packaging, 75
- socket specifications, 75-76

Pentium III processors, 96-100
- chipsets, 192-195
- SECC (single edge contact cartridge) packaging, 75
- socket specifications, 75-76
- SSE (Streaming SIMD Extensions), 63-64

Pentium 4 processors, 101-104
- chipsets
  - ATI chipsets, 216
  - Intel 96x series, 204-205
  - Intel 915 family, 202-203
  - Intel 925X family, 203
  - Intel 945 Express family, 203
  - Intel 955X, 204
  - Intel 975X, 204
  - NVIDIA chipset, 216-217
  - reference tables, 196-202
  - SiS chipsets, 215
  - ULi chipsets, 215-216
  - VIA chipsets, 216, 226
- heating/cooling issues, 104-106
- NetBurst microarchitecture, 103
- Pentium 4 Extreme Edition, 104
- power supply issues, 104-106
- specifications, 102-104

Pentium-MMX processors, 62-63
Pentium Pro processors, 96-97
- chipsets, 192-195
- dynamic execution
  - dataflow analysis, 65
  - multiple branch prediction, 64
  - speculative execution, 65
- socket specifications, 75-76
- SPGA (staggered pin grid array) packaging, 74

per inch (TPI), 468
performance
- CD drives
  - access times, 598
  - buffers/cache, 598
  - CAV (constant angular velocity) technology, 593
  - CLV (constant linear velocity) technology, 593-595
  - data transfer rates, 593
  - table of CD-ROM drive speeds and transfer rates, 595
- DVD drives, 595-597
  - access times, 598
  - buffers/cache, 598
  - DMA and Ultra-DMA, 598
- HDDs (hard disk drives)
  - access times, 503
  - average seek times, 502
  - cache programs, 503-504
  - interleave, 504

        latency, 503
        reliability, 504-506
        transfer rates, 500-502
    IEEE 1394, 723-725
    memory speed
        clock speeds, 333
        cycle times, 333
        DDR SDRAM, 339-340
        DDR2 SDRAM, 341-342
        DDR3 SDRAM, 343-344
        DDR4 SDRAM, 345
        GHz (gigahertz), 332
        interleaving, 336
        MHz (megahertz), 332
        module speeds, 357
        nanoseconds, 332
        processor bus speeds, 333-335
        SDRAM, 338
    overclocking, 133-134
        bus speeds and multipliers, 140
        CPU voltage settings, 142
        modern PC clocks, 136-138
        pitfalls, 140-142
        quartz crystals, 134-136
        Sandy Bridge and Ivy Bridge processors, 142
        tips and guidelines, 138-139
        unlocking cores, 139-140
    software, 645
    USB (Universal Serial Bus), 723-725

Periodic and Random Deviation (PARD), 898

Peripheral Configuration menu (BIOS Setup), 301-302

Peripheral Connect Interface buses. *See* PCI buses

peripheral diagnostics software, 976

peripherals. *See* input devices

perpendicular magnetic recording (PMR), 458-460

persistence, 664

personal area networks (PANs), 800

Personal Computer Memory Card International Association. *See* PC Card

Personal Use License for System Builder license, 930

perspective correction, 644

PFA (Predictive Failure Analysis), 505

PFC (power factor correction), 898-899

PGA (pin grid array), 75

Phase Alternate Line (PAL), 641

phase-change material, 147

phase-change recording, 561

Phenom processors
    chipsets
        AMD 480x and 500 series chipsets, 220
        AMD 690 series chipsets, 221
        AMD 700 series chipsets, 221-222
        AMD 800 series chipsets, 222
        AMD 900 series chipsets, 223-225
        AMD A series chipsets, 225
    Phenom, 126-128
    Phenom II, 126-128

Philips CD-ROM design and development, 526-527

Phoenix Technologies
    BIOS error codes, 322
        Phoenix Award BIOS, 273
        Phoenix BIOS 4 and later, 983-984
        Phoenix BIOS 486 and earlier, 981-983
        POST onscreen messages, 979-981
    reverse engineering of IBM software, 21-22

phone line surge protectors, 922

Photo CDs, 575

photolithography, 70-71

photoresist coating (CDs), 527

physical configuration, documenting, 946

physical formatting. *See* low-level formatting

piconets, 813

pico sliders, 469

Picture CDs, 576

piezoelectricity, 134

Piledriver FX processors, 128-131

pin grid array (PGA), 75

pinned magnetic layers, 446

PIO (Programmed I/O) transfer modes, 396

PIO Mode setting (Drive Configuration menu), 304

PI (parity inner) bytes, 553

pitch, 680

pits
    CDs, 527-529
    DVDs, 549

pixels, 653-657
    bad pixels, 675-676
    dead pixels, 675
    pixels per inch (PPI), 758
    stuck pixels, 675

pixie dust, 485

planar. *See* motherboards

plasma displays, 665

plated thin-film media, 484-485

Platform Compatibility Guide (PCG), 881

Platform Controller Hub (PHC), 935

platters, 466, 483-484

Plextor Zero Link technology, 564

pliers, needle-nose, 1002

Plug and Play. *See* PnP

Plug & Play O/S setting (Boot Configuration menu), 298
PMA (power memory area), 531
PMOS transistors, 12
PMR (perpendicular magnetic recording), 458-460
PnP (Plug and Play)
  hot-plugging, 713
  PnP BIOS, 317
    ACPI (Advanced Configuration and Power Interface), 318-319
    device IDs, 318
point-contact transistor, 6
pointing devices
  choosing, 939
  mice
    ball-driven mouse, 758-759
    buttons, 758
    cleaning, 765
    components, 758
    history of, 757-758
    hybrid mice, 762
    manufacturers, 758
    optical mouse, 759-760
    PS/2 mouse port, 761
    scroll wheels, 762-763
    sensitivity, 758
    serial interfaces, 760-761
    touch-sensitive mice, 763
    troubleshooting, 764-765
    USB (Universal Serial Bus), 762
  touch pads, 768-769
  touchscreen technology, 770-771
  trackballs, 758, 769-770
  TrackPoint, 765-768
  wireless
    Bluetooth, 772
    IR (infrared), 771
    power management, 772
    proprietary radio frequency, 771
    troubleshooting, 773
point of presence (PoP), 788
point-to-point topology, 833
polarizing filters (LCDs), 661
pollutants, 1020-1021
PO (parity outer) bytes, 553
PoP (point of presence), 788
ports
  addresses
    chipset-based device port addresses, 259-260
    motherboard-based device port addresses, 259-260
  EUHP (eSATA USB Hybrid Port), 405
  explained, 703, 937-938
  FireWire. *See* FireWire
  hot-plugging, 725-728
  IEEE 1394. *See* IEEE 1394
  legacy ports, 703, 937
  motherboard mouse port (PS/2), 761
  on ATX motherboards, 170
  parallel ports, 703-704
    25-pin parallel port connectors, 734-735
    bidirectional (8-bit) parallel ports, 737
    configuration, 738
    ECP (Enhanced Capabilities) parallel ports, 737-738
    EPP (Enhanced Parallel Port), 737
    explained, 729, 734
    IEEE 1284 standard, 735-736
    standard parallel ports, 736-737
  serial ports, 703-704, 733
    9-pin serial port connectors, 732
    9-pin-to-25-pin serial port connectors, 733
    25-pin serial port connectors, 732
    configuration, 733-734
    explained, 729-730
    locations, 730-733
    UART (Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter) chips, 733
  switch ports, 830
  USB. *See* USB (Universal Serial Bus)
POS (Power on Suspend), 910
positive DC voltages
  voltage rails, 846-847
  voltage regulators, 847
positive-pressure-ventilation design, 852
POST (power on self test), 267, 368
  audio error codes, 977
    AMI BIOS, 978-979
    Award BIOS/Phoenix FirstBIOS, 979
    IBM BIOS, 984
    IBM/Lenovo, 987-989
    Phoenix BIOS, 981-984
  checkpoint codes, 977
  explained, 975-976
  fatal errors, 976
  onscreen messages, 978
    Award BIOS/Phoenix FirstBIOS, 980-981
    IBM BIOS, 984-987
  POST cards, 1002
  troubleshooting, 1024-1025
postcodemaster.com, 977
Poulsen, Valdemar, 459
power calibration area (PCA), 531

power connectors
  - 4-pin +12V power connectors, 882-883
  - 4-pin to 8-pin +12V power connectors, 884-885
  - 8-pin +12V power connectors, 883-884
  - AT, 870-872
  - ATX12V 2.x 24-pin, 877-879
  - ATX/ATX12V 1.x
    - 6-pin auxiliary power connectors, 876-877
    - 20-pin main power connectors, 872-874
    - maximum power-handling capabilities, 875-876
    - Molex Mini-Fit Jr. power connectors, 874-875
  - backward/forward compatibility, 885-886
  - Dell proprietary ATX design, 887
  - explained, 870
  - floppy power connectors, 888-889
  - PCG (Platform Compatibility Guide), 881
  - PCI Express x16 Graphics Power connectors, 890-893
  - peripheral power connectors, 887-888
  - power switch connectors
    - color coding, 869
    - front panel motherboard-controlled switches, 866-868
    - front panel power supply AC switches, 868-869
    - integral power supply AC switches, 868
  - SATA power connectors, 889
  - VRM (voltage regulator module), 879-880

power cycling, 908-911, 1017-1018

power factor correction (PFC), 898-899

Power_Good signal, 848-849

power LED indications, 231

power-line noise, 1018-1019

power management
  - 80 PLUS Program, 903-904
  - ACPI (Advanced Configuration and Power Interface), 905-908
  - APM (Advanced Power Management), 904-905
  - BIOS Power menu, 312-313
  - DPMS (Display Power Management Signaling), 660-661
  - Energy 2000 standard, 661
  - Energy Star standard, 660
  - ENERGY STAR systems, 904
  - legacy power management, 907
  - SMM (System Management Mode), 60-61
  - wireless input devices, 772

power memory area (PMA), 531

Power menu (BIOS Setup), 312-313

Power_OK signal, 848-849

power on self test. *See* POST

Power on Suspend (POS), 910

Power Over eSATA (eSATAp), 405-407

power-protection systems
  - backup power
    - standby power supply, 922-923
    - UPS (uninterruptible power supply), 923-925
  - explained, 919-921
  - line conditioners, 922
  - phone line surge protectors, 922
  - surge protectors, 921

Power Supply Design Guide for Desktop Platform Form Factors, 883

power supply. *See* PSUs (power supply units)

power switch connectors
  - color coding, 869
  - front panel motherboard-controlled switches, 866-868
  - front panel power supply AC switches, 868-869
  - integral power supply AC switches, 868

powerline networks, 839-840

PPI (pixels per inch), 758

PrairieTek 2.5” hard drives, 465

preboot environment (BIOS), 287-289

Predictive Failure Analysis (PFA), 505

prefetching, 63

prefixes for decimal/binary multiples, 414-415

pre-grooves (CD-R), 540

Press ESC to skip memory test (error message), 980

Press TAB to show POST screen (error message), 981

preventative maintenance. *See* care and maintenance, 1011

Primary IDE Master setting (Drive Configuration menu), 304

Primary IDE Slave setting (Drive Configuration menu), 304

Primary master hard disk fail (error message), 981

Primary slave hard disk fail (error message), 981

Primary Video Adapter setting (Video Configuration menu), 308

primitives, 644

PRML (Partial-Response, Maximum-Likelihood), 455

probes (logic), 1007-1008
processor ducts, 151
Processor Frequency ID Utility, 138
Processor Identification Utility, 138
Processor Speed setting (BIOS main menu), 295
Processor Stepping setting (BIOS Maintenance menu), 294
Processor Type setting (BIOS main menu), 295
Processor Zone Response setting (Fan Control Configuration menu), 309
processors. *See* specific processors (for example, Pentium)
Professional 3DNow! technology, 64
program area (CDs), 531
programmable ROM (PROM), 270-271
Programmed I/O (PIO) modes, 396
projectors
  DLP projectors, 667
  LCD (liquid crystal display) projectors, 666
PROM (programmable ROM), 270-271
proprietary-design motherboards, 177
proprietary power supply standards, 851
proprietary radio frequency input devices, 771
ProtectDisc, 591
Protected Area Run Time Interface Extension Services (PARTIES), 288
protective coating (CDs), 528
protocols. *See* specific protocols
PS/2 mouse port, 761
PS/2-type connectors, 159
PS/2 Y adapter, 1003
PS3 form factor, 856
PSB (processor side bus). *See* buses
pseudo-open drain, 622
PS_ON signal, 848, 866
PSUs (power supply units)
  -5V power sources, 847-848
  -12V power sources, 847-848
  +3.3V power sources, 846
  +5V power sources, 846
  +12V power sources, 846
  backup power
    standby power supply, 922-923
    UPS (uninterruptible power supply), 923-925
  batteries
    replacing, 928
    RTC/NVRAM, 925-928
  buying tips, 918-919
  connecting, 958-961
  constant voltage, 845
  CrossfireX certification, 900
  definition of, 28
  efficiency, 898
  ESD (electrostatic discharge) protection, 945, 1003
  floppy power connectors, 888-889
  form factors
    ATX/ATX12V, 852-854
    CFX12V, 860, 863
    EPS/EPS12V, 858-860
    explained, 849-850
    Flex ATX, 864-866
    LFX12V, 863
    proprietary standards, 851
    PS3, 856
    SFX/SFX12V, 854-858
    table of, 851
    TFX12V, 860
  hold-up time, 897
  importance of, 845
  input range, 897
  linear design, 893-894
  line regulation, 898
  loads, 894-895
    apparent power, 899
    inductive, 898
    load regulation, 898
    maximum load current, 898
    minimum load current, 898
    nonlinear, 899
    resistive, 898
    working power, 899
  modular cables, 919
  modular power supplies, 958
  motherboard power connectors
    4-pin +12V power connectors, 882-883
    4-pin to 8-pin +12V power connectors, 884-885
    8-pin +12V power connectors, 883-884
    AT, 870-872
    ATX12V 2.x 24-pin, 877-879
    ATX/ATX12V 1.x, 872-877
    backward/forward, 885-886
    Dell proprietary ATX design, 887
    explained, 870
    PCG (Platform Compatibility, 881
    power switch connectors, 866-869
    VRM (voltage regulator), 879-880
  MTBF (Mean Time Between Failures), 897
  negative DC voltages, 847-848
  outlet testers, 1008
  output ratings, 895-896
  overloading, 912-913
  overvoltage protection, 898
  PARD (Periodic and Random Deviation), 898

- PCI Express x16 Graphics Power connectors, 890-893
- peak inrush current, 897
- Pentium 4 issues, 104-106
- peripheral power connectors, 887-888
- PFC (power factor correction), 898-899
- positive DC voltages
  - voltage rails, 846-847
  - voltage regulators, 847
- power cycling, 908-911
- Power_Good signal, 848-849
- powering off/on
  - electrical costs, 908-909
  - S3 (Suspend To RAM) state, 910
  - S4 (Hibernate) state, 910
  - thermal shock, 908
- power management
  - 80 PLUS Program, 903-904
  - ACPI (Advanced Configuration) and, 905-908
  - APM (Advanced Power Management), 904-905
  - DPMS (Display Power Management Signaling), 660-661
  - Energy 2000 standard, 661
  - Energy Star standard, 660, 904
  - legacy power management, 907
  - SMM (System Management Mode), 60-61
- power-protection systems
  - backup power, 922
  - explained, 919-921
  - line conditioners, 922
  - phone line surge protectors, 922
  - surge protectors, 921
- power-use calculations, 901-903
- preventative maintenance
  - power cycling, 1017-1018
  - power-line noise, 1018-1019
  - static electricity, 1018
- processor voltage settings, 87, 142
- protective features, 896
- ripple, 898
- safety certifications, 900-901
- SATA power connectors, 889
- SLI-ready, 900
- soft-power feature, 848
- sources for replacement power supplies, 919
- switching design, 846, 893-894
- test equipment
  - back probing, 915-916
  - digital infrared thermometers, 916
  - DMMs (digital multimeters), 913-916
  - variable voltage transformers, 917
- transient response, 897
- troubleshooting, 911-912, 1025
  - diagnostic procedures, 912
  - inadequate cooling, 913
  - overloaded power supply, 912-913
- universal power supplies, 896
- voltage measurements, 915-916

PTP (parallel track path), 556-557

pure mechanical keyswitches, 742-743

PWR_OK signal, 848-849

PXE Boot to LAN setting (Boot menu), 315

Q

QPI (Quick Path Interconnect), 82

QPSK/CCK data encoding, 810

quartz crystals, 134-136

QuickConnect standard, 793

Quick Path Interconnect (QPI), 82

Quick Power On Self Test feature (BIOS Setup), 316

QuickStop response (TrackPoint), 768

QuickTechPRO, 990

quiet boots, 275

R

RAB (Raid Advisory Board), 434

radio frequency input devices, 771

radio-frequency interference (RFI), 1019

RadioLabs, 1020

RadioShack, 1000

Raid Advisory Board (RAB), 434

RAID (redundant array of independent disks), 434
- levels, 434-436
- onboard BIOS, 274
- software RAID, 436-437

rails (voltage), 846-847

RAM (random access memory)
- buffer underruns, 601
- cache, 936-937
  - bus snooping, 60
  - cache controllers, 60
  - definition of, 53, 330
  - direct-mapped cache, 59
  - explained, 329
  - fully associative mapped cache, 59
  - hard disk drive cache programs, 503-504

- hits/misses, 330
- Level 1, 54-56, 330
- Level 2, 56, 330
- Level 3, 56, 331
- Pentium-MMX improvements, 62
- performance and design, 57-59
- set associative cache, 59
- speed, 60
- TLB (translation lookaside buffer), 60
- write-back cache, 370
- write-through cache, 60

CMOS RAM
- addresses, 285-287
- backing up, 276-277
- configuring with BIOS Setup. *See* Setup program (BIOS)
- definition of, 266-267
- diagnostic status byte codes, 287

compared to storage, 326

DDR2 SDRAM, 340-342

DDR3 SDRAM, 342-344

DDR4 SDRAM, 344-345

DDR SDRAM, 338-340, 936

definition of, 28

DIMMs (dual inline memory modules), 346, 936
- 168-pin SDRAM DIMMs, 348
- DDR DIMMs, 348, 353
- DDR2 DIMMs, 348, 353
- DDR3 DIMMs, 349
- purchasing, 365
- SDR DIMMs, 352

DIP (dual inline package) chips, 346

DMA (direct memory access)
- busmaster DMA, 397
- CD/DVD drives, 598
- channels, 259
- multiword, 397
- singleword, 396-397
- Ultra-DMA, 397

DRAM (dynamic RAM)
- compared to SRAM, 329
- explained, 327-329

ECC (error correcting code), 360-361

EDO RAM (extended data out RAM), 336-337

explained, 325-327

FPO DRAM (Fast Page Mode DRAM), 335-336

hard fails, 357

HMA (high memory area), 46

installation, 952

layout, 326

logical mapping, 326

memory modules
- capacities, 349-351
- determining module size/features, 354-355
- DIMMs (dual inline memory modules), 346-353, 365
- dual rank, 346
- installation, 366-367
- memory banks, 351, 356-357
- purchasing, 364-366
- registered modules, 351-352
- replacing with higher-capacity versions, 366
- RIMMs (Rambus inline memory modules), 346, 349
- SIMMs (single inline memory modules), 346-347, 366
- single rank, 346
- speeds, 357

memory testers, 1008-1009

parity checking, 359-360

purchasing
- DIMMs, 365
- obsolete memory, 366
- suppliers, 364-365

RDRAM (Rambus DRAM), 345

RTC/NVRAM batteries
- modern CMOS batteries, 925-927
- obsolete/unique CMOS batteries, 927-928
- troubleshooting, 928

SDRAM (synchronous DRAM), 337-338

soft errors, 357-359

speed
- clock speeds, 333
- cycle times, 333
- GHz (gigahertz), 332
- interleaving, 336
- MHz (megahertz), 332
- nanoseconds, 332
- processor bus speeds, 333-335

SRAM (static RAM)
- compared to DRAM, 329
- explained, 329
- hits/misses, 330
- Level 1 cache, 330
- Level 2 cache, 330
- Level 3 cache, 331

system logical memory layout, 374-376

troubleshooting, 368-372, 1031-1034
- with diagnostic software, 368-369
- memory defect isolation procedures, 372-374
- with POST (Power On Self Test), 368
- step-by-step process, 370-372
- types of errors, 370

- Ultra-DMA, 598
- upgrading, 361-364
- video RAM, 620-621
  - DDR SDRAM, 621
  - GDDR2 SDRAM, 621
  - GDDR3 SDRAM, 622
  - GDDR4 SDRAM, 622
  - GDDR5 SDRAM, 622
  - RAM calculations, 622-623
  - SGRAM, 621
  - speed, 622
  - video memory bus width, 623-624
  - VRAM, 621
  - WRAM, 621
- volatile storage, 326

RAMAC (Random Access Method of Accounting and Control), 439

Rambus DRAM (RDRAM), 345

Rambus inline memory modules (RIMMs), 346, 349

RAMdisk, 512

Random Access Method of Accounting and Control (RAMAC), 439

ranks of memory modules, 346

raster, 665

rasterization, 644

Ratio Actual Value setting (BIOS Maintenance menu), 294

Raytek, 916

RDRAM (Rambus DRAM), 345

read errors (CDs), 535-536

read latency, 335

read-only memory. *See* ROM

read process
- flash memory, 520-521
- magnetic storage, 442-443

read/write heads, 440, 443-444, 485-487
- ferrite, 444
- GMR (giant magneto-resistive), 446-447
- MIG (Metal-In-Gap), 444
- MR (magneto-resistive), 445-446
- PMR (perpendicular magnetic recording), 458-460
- TF (thin film), 444-445

ReadyBoost, 521-522

real mode, 44-45

real-time clock/nonvolatile memory (RTC/NVRAM), 266

real-time clock. *See* RTC

rear out sound card connectors, 687

receptacle testers, 1008

recordable DVDs, 559

recording
- CDs, 541, 600-601
  - buffer underruns, 601
  - DAO (Disc-at-Once) recording, 573
  - packet writing, 573-575
  - Track-at-Once, 573
- recording media
  - AFC (antiferromagnetically coupled), 485
  - oxide, 484
  - thin-film, 484-485
- sound sampling, 681-682
- standard recording, 478
- ZBR (zoned-bit recording), 478-480

recording media
- AFC (antiferromagnetically coupled), 485
- oxide, 484
- thin-film, 484-485

Recording Review, 693

recovery
- of flash BIOS, 282-285
- System Restore, 1012

Recuva, 482

Red Book (CD-DA) format, 571

Red Hill Hardware Guide, 468

redrawing screen, 665

Reduced Instruction Set Computer (RISC), 61, 739

redundant array of independent disks. *See* RAID

refresh rates, 657-659, 664-665

refreshing screen, 665

region codes used by Blu-ray disc, 592

region-free DVD players, 592

regional playback control (RPC), 591-592

The Register (website), 26

registered memory modules, 351-352

regulators (voltage), 847

reinstalling components, 1021

reliability
- of ATA (AT Attachment), 378
- of HDDs (hard disk drives)
  - MTBF (mean time between failures), 504
  - PFA (Predictive Failure Analysis), 505
  - S.M.A.R.T. (Self-Monitoring, Analysis, and Reporting Technology), 504-506

remarking processors, 74

remote power switch connectors. *See* power switch connectors

removable storage devices. *See also* flash memory
- choosing, 939
- explained, 507
- flash memory
  - card capacities, 518
  - card readers, 520-521
  - CompactFlash, 509
  - comparison of, 517-519
  - development of, 507
  - device sizes, 509
  - explained, 508-509
  - file systems, 520
  - keychain devices, 507

- Lexar Memory Stick Pro, 511
- Lexar Memory Stick Pro Duo, 511
- MMC (MultiMediaCard), 510
- NAND (Not AND), 508
- NOR (Not OR), 508
- PC Card, 511
- ReadyBoost support, 521-522
- SD (SecureDigital) SecureDigital (SD), 510
- SmartMedia, 509-510
- Sony Memory Stick, 510
- Sony Memory Stick Micro, 511
- Sony Memory Stick XC, 511
- speed classes, 519-520
- SSD (solid-state drive), 511-515
- USB flash drives, 516-517
- xD-Picture Card, 511

floppy drives, 523

tape drives, 523

removing video adapters, 968

rendering images, 644-645, 648
- AMD CrossFireX, 648-649
- AMD Eyefinity, 650
- NVIDIA SLI, 648

repair. *See* troubleshooting

Repeat Delay parameter (Windows keyboards), 749

Repeat Rate parameter (Windows keyboards), 749

repeaters, wireless, 832

replacing
- batteries, 928
- components
  - bootstrap approach, 1023-1024
  - compared to reinstalling components, 1021
  - known-good spare technique, 1022
- power supply, 919
- video adapters, 968

report status command, 505

reprogrammable microcode, 88

Reset Intel AMT to default factory settings (BIOS Maintenance menu), 294

resistive power, 898

resolution
- of monitors, 651-652
- optimal resolution, 658

resources. *See* system resources

restore points, 1012

Resuming from disk, Press TAB to show POST screen (error message), 981

reverse-engineering software, 22

RF (radio frequency) input devices, 771

RFI (radio-frequency interference), 1019-1020

RG-58 cable (Thinnet), 817

RIMMs (Rambus inline memory modules), 346, 349

ring topology, 826

ripping CDs, 587-588

ripple (power supply), 898

RISC (Reduced Instruction Set Computer), 61, 739

RJ-45 connectors, 815

RLL (Run Length Limited), 442, 452-453

Roberts, Ed, 14

Rock Ridge file system, 586

Rock Ridge Interchange Protocol (RRIP), 586

ROM. *See also* BIOS
- definition of, 267
- EEPROM (electronically erasable programmable ROM), 272-273
- EPROM (erasable programmable ROM), 271-272
- explained, 327
- flash ROM, 272-273
- hardware, 267-268
- manufacturers, 273-274
- mask ROM, 270
- PROM (programmable ROM), 270-271
- shadowing, 269

root hubs, 706

rotary voice-coil actuators, 489

routers, 796

RPC (regional playback control), 591-592

RRIP (Rock Ridge Interchange Protocol), 586

RTC (real-time clock), 266
- modern CMOS batteries, 925-927
- obsolete/unique CMOS batteries, 927-928
- troubleshooting, 928

RTS2011LC cooling system, 149

rubber dome keyswitches, 744

Run Length Limited (RLL), 442, 452-453

Rutledge, Joseph, 766

S

S3 (Suspend To RAM) state, 910

S4 (Hibernate) state, 910

S-100 bus, 14

SA-CD (Super Audio CD), 577-578

SafeAudio, 589

Safe Removal settings (drives), 726-727

safety. *See* security

SAL (Soft Adjacent Layer) structure, 446

sampled sound. *See* Waveform audio sampling

sampling, 534, 681-682

SanDisk Corporation CompactFlash, 509
Sandy Bridge architecture (Core i), 113-114, 142
SASI (Shugart Associates System Interface). *See* SCSI (small computer system interface)
SATA (Serial ATA)
  - AHCI (Advanced Host Controller Interface), 408-409
  - backward compatibility, 398
  - BIOS setup, 407
  - cables and connectors, 401-403
  - CD/DVD drive interfaces, 598-599
  - definition of, 377
  - eSATA (external SATA), 404-405
  - eSATAp (Power Over eSATA), 405-407
  - explained, 398
  - mSATA (mini-SATA), 403-404
  - NVMe (Non-Volatile Memory Express), 409
  - power connectors, 889
  - SATA Express, 399-401
  - Serial ATA International Organization, 380, 399
  - standards and performance, 398-399
  - transfer modes, 399, 409-410

SATA Express, 399-401
satellite broadband
  - explained, 784-785
  - HughesNet, 785
  - performance issues, 786-787
  - StarBand, 786
  - WildBlue, 785-786

satellite speakers, 699
Save Custom Defaults command (BIOS Exit menu), 316
SB 810 South Bridge chip, 222
SB 850 South Bridge chip, 222
scalable link interface (SLI), 890-893
scan codes, 749-750
scan conversion, 645
scan-line interfacing (SLI), 648
scan rates, 657-659, 664-665
Scan User Flash Area setting (Boot menu), 315
Scarlet Book standard (SA-CD), 577-578
SCAT (Single Chip AT) chipsets, 182
scientific method, applying to troubleshooting, 1021-1022
scratchy sound, troubleshooting, 697
screen flicker, 664
screwdrivers, 1000, 1002, 1009
scroll wheels (mouse), 762-763
SCSI (small computer system interface), 523
SD (SecureDigital), 510
SD (Super Density) disks, 548
SDR (single data rate) DIMMs, 352
SDRAM (synchronous DRAM), 337-338
  - DDR SDRAM (double data rate SDRAM), 936
  - SDRAM DIMM, 348

SDRAM CAS# Latency setting (Memory Configuration menu), 297
SDRAM Frequency setting (Memory Configuration menu), 297
SDRAM RAS Act. To Pre. setting (Memory Configuration menu), 297
SDRAM RAS# Precharge setting (Memory Configuration menu), 298
SDRAM RAS# to CAS# delay setting (Memory Configuration menu), 298
SDRAM Timing Control setting (Memory Configuration menu), 298
SDSL (Symmetrical DSL), 781
sealing CD/DVD drives, 600
SECAM (Sequential Couleur Avec Mémoire), 641
SECC (single edge contact cartridge) processor packaging, 75
SEC-DED (single-bit error-correction double-bit error detection), 360
second-party memory modules, 364
Second SATA Master setting (Drive Configuration menu), 304
secondary cache. *See* Level 2 cache
Secondary IDE Master setting (Drive Configuration menu), 304
Secondary IDE Slave setting (Drive Configuration menu), 304
Secondary master hard disk fail (error message), 981
Secondary SATA Controller setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 302
Secondary slave hard disk fail (error message), 981
Secondary Video Adapter setting (Video Configuration menu), 308
sector addressing
  - CHS (cylinder head sector)
    - 2.1 GB barrier, 423
    - 4.2 GB barrier, 423-425
    - 8.4 GB barrier, 427-428
    - 528 MB barrier, 419-421
    - BIOS commands versus ATA commands, 418-419
    - CHS bit-shift translation, 421-423

        - CHS/LBA conversions, 417-418
        - compared to LBA (logical block address), 416-417
    - LBA (logical block address)
        - 137 GB barrier and beyond, 429-430
        - BIOS commands versus ATA commands, 418-419
        - CHS/LBA conversions, 417-418
        - compared to CHS (cylinder head sector), 416-417
        - LBA-assist translation, 425-427
    - prefixes for decimal/binary multiples, 414-415
- **sectors, 466. *See also* tracks**
    - 512-byte sector on modern drive, 472
    - Advanced Format (4K sectors), 473-475
    - CDs, 533
    - data bytes, 470
    - DVDs, 553-554
    - fields, 470
    - gaps in, 470
    - headers/trailers, 471
    - numbering, 470
    - sector drive partition alignment, 475-477
    - usable space, 471
    - Western Digital WD1003/WD1006 (IBM AT) 512-byte sector format, 471-472
    - Xebec 1210/1220 (IBM XT) 512-byte sector format, 471
- **security**
    - ATA (AT Attachment)
        - HPAs (host protected areas), 412-413
        - Security Mode, 411-412
    - biometric security, 516
    - BIOS Setup settings, 311-312
    - CD copy protection, 536, 588-589
    - DRM (digital rights management), 589
    - DSL (digital subscriber line), 782
    - DVD copy protection, 589-590
        - breakability of, 591
        - Cinavia, 591
        - CSS (content scramble system), 590-591
        - ProtectDisc, 591
        - region codes used by Blu-ray disc, 592
        - RPC (regional playback control), 591-592
    - Internet connections
        - explained, 794-795
        - routers, 796
        - service interruptions, 795
        - shared connections, 795-796
    - passwords, 311
    - power-protection systems
        - backup power, 922
        - explained, 919-921
        - line conditioners, 922
        - phone line surge protectors, 922
        - surge protectors, 921
    - viruses, CIH, 278
    - war driving, 833
    - WEP (wired equivalent privacy), 834-835
    - wireless networks, 833-835
    - WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access), 834
- **Security menu (BIOS Setup), 311-312**
- **Security Option setting (Security menu), 311**
- **seek times, 463, 502**
- **self-cleaning lenses (CD/DVD drives), 600**
- **Self-Monitoring, Analysis, and Reporting Technology (S.M.A.R.T.), 383, 504-506**
- **Selker, Ted, 766**
- **semiconductors, 12, 25**
- **semiproprietary LPX motherboards, 160**
- **Sempron processors, 124**
    - chipsets
        - AMD 480x and 500 series chipsets, 220
        - AMD 690 series chipsets, 221
        - AMD 700 series chipsets, 221-222
        - AMD 800 series chipsets, 222
        - AMD 900 series chipsets, 223-225
        - AMD A series chipsets, 225
    - overview, 126-128
- **sensitivity of mice, 758**
- **SEPP (single edge processor package), 75**
- **Sequential Couleur Avec Mémoire (SECAM), 641**
- **Serial ATA. *See* SATA**
- **Serial ATA International Organization, 380, 399**
- **serial mouse, 760-761**
- **serial ports, 703-704**
    - 9-pin serial port connectors, 732
    - 9-pin-to-25-pin serial port connectors, 733
    - 25-pin serial port connectors, 732
    - configuration, 733-734
    - explained, 729-730
    - locations, 730-733
    - UART (Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter) chips, 733
- **Serial Port setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 302**
- **Series A/B connectors (USB), 712**
- **SERs (soft error rates), 357-359**
- **servo-controlled systems, 488**

servo mechanisms, 489-493
  dedicated servo, 492-493
  disk sweep, 491
  embedded servo, 492
  gray code, 490
  servowriters, 490
  thermal recalibration, 490
  wedge servo, 491-492
servowriters, 490
set associative cache, 59
SET MAX ADDRESS command (ATA), 413
Set Supervisor Password setting (Security menu), 311
setup passwords, 311
Setup program (BIOS), 267
  accessing, 292
  additional setup features, 316-317
  Boot Configuration menu, 298
  Boot menu, 314-315
  Chipset Configuration menu, 298-300
  Drive Configuration menu, 302-305
  Event Log Configuration menu, 306-307
  Exit menu, 315-316
  explained, 292-293
  Fan Control Configuration menu, 309
  Floppy Configuration menu, 305-306
  hardware monitoring display, 310
  main menu, 294-295
  Maintenance menu, 293-294
  Memory Configuration menu, 297-298
  PCI Configuration menu, 296
  PCI Express Configuration menu, 296-297
  Peripheral Configuration menu, 301-302
  Power menu, 312-313
  running, 969-971
  Security menu, 311-312
  USB Configuration menu, 308-309
  Video Configuration menu, 307-308
Set User Password setting (Security menu), 311
SFX power supply, 854-858
SFX12V power supply, 854-858
SGI OpenGL, 646
SGRAM (Synchronous Graphics RAM), 621
shading, 645
  flat shading, 642
  Gouraud shading, 643
shadow masks (CRT), 664
shadowed ROM (read-only memory), 269
Shannon, Claude, 791
Shannon's Law, 791
sharing
  Internet connections, 795-796
  interrupts, 255
shielded twisted pair (STP) cables, 817-818
Shima, Masatoshi, 30-31
Shockley, William, 6, 11
Shugart, Alan, 464, 523
Shugart Associates, 464-465
Shugart Associates System Interface (SASI). ***See*** **SCSI (small computer system interface)**
shutdown, troubleshooting, 1026
Shutdown.exe, 999
signals
  keyboard connector signals, 752
  PATA (Parallel ATA) signals, 392-393
  Power_Good, 848-849
  PS_ON, 848, 866
  signal boosters, 832
  signal skew, 704
  signal processing methods (audio), 688
  signal-to-noise ratio (SNR), 681
SIIG, 416
  mechanical-switch keyboards, 743
Silent Boot setting (Boot menu), 315
silicon, 69
Silicon Image PanelLink, 629-630
silicon on insulator (SOI), 71
silicon transistors, 12
SIMMs (single inline memory modules), 346
  30-pin SIMM, 347
  72-pin SIMM, 347
  purchasing, 366
Simon computer, 19
single-bit error-correction double-bit error detection (SEC-DED), 360
Single Chip AT (SCAT) chipsets, 182
single data rate (SDR) DIMMs, 352
Single-Density encoding, 451
single edge contact cartridge (SECC) packaging, 75
single edge processor package (SEPP), 75
single-gap heads, 446
single inline memory modules. ***See*** **SIMMs**
single-level cell (SLC), 513-514
single rank memory modules, 346
single-sided memory modules, 346
singleword DMA (direct memory access), 396-397
SiS (Silicon Integrated Systems) chipsets, 215, 227
SIV, 275

SIW (System Information for Windows), 416, 1032

Sixth SATA Master setting (Drive Configuration menu), 304

size
- of flash memory devices, 509
- of hard disk drive platters, 483
- of video monitors, 650

skins (keyboard), 756

slave drives (ATA), 393

SLC (single-level cell), 513-514

sleep feature for speakers, 699

sliders (head), 448-450

slimline cases, 933

SLI (scalable link interface), 890-893

SLI (scan-line interfacing), 648

SLI-ready power supplies, 900

slot load mechanism (CD/DVD drives), 599

slots (processor), 178-181

slotted masks (CRT), 664

SmartMedia, 509-510

Smartronix, 1005

S.M.A.R.T. (Self-Monitoring, Analysis, and Reporting Technology), 383, 504-506

S.M.A.R.T. setting (Drive Configuration menu), 304

SMBIOS (System Management) BIOS Setup, 306

SMI (System Management Interrupt), 61

SMM (System Management Mode), 60-61

snooping (bus), 60

SNR (signal-to-noise ratio), 681

Socket B, 81, 82

Socket H, 80-81

Socket H2, 82

socketed Op Amp chips, 689

sockets, 178-181
- LIF (low insertion force), 78
- Socket 478, 78-79
- Socket 939, 83-84
- Socket 940, 83-84
- Socket AM2, 84-86
- Socket AM2+, 84-86
- Socket AM3, 84-86
- Socket AM3+, 85-86
- Socket F (1207FX), 86
- Socket FM1, 86
- Socket FM2, 86
- Socket LGA775, 79
- Socket LGA1155, 82
- Socket LGA1156, 80-81
- Socket LGA1366, 81-82
- Socket LGA2011, 83
- specifications, 75-76
- ZIF (zero insertion force), 74, 78

Socket T, 79

Soft Adjacent Layer (SAL) structure, 446

soft error rates (SERs), 357-359

soft errors, 328

soft memory fails, 357-359

soft-off switches, 866

Soft Power, 854

soft-power feature, 848

software
- copyright protection, 21
- industry control of, 20-23
- optimization, 645
- reverse-engineering, 22
- software RAID, 436-437
- software resources, 942
- troubleshooting, 1024

SOI (silicon on insulator), 71

solid-state drive. *See* SSD

solid state floppy disk card (SSFDC), 509

Sony
- 3.5” half-height drives, 465
- CD-ROM design and development, 526-527
- DRM (digital rights management), 589
- Memory Stick, 510
- Memory Stick Micro, 511
- Memory Stick XC, 511

sound. *See* audio

Sound Blaster, 682

Sound Blaster Pro, 682

sound cards
- AdLib, 682
- choosing, 940
- connectors, 686-689
  - analog RCA, 689
  - aux in, 688
  - coaxial PDIF, 688
  - HDMI (High Definition Multimedia Interface), 688
  - line in sound card connectors, 687
  - line out sound card connectors, 687
  - microphone in connectors, 687
  - MIDI in/out, 688
  - mono in connectors, 687
  - optical SPDIF out, 688
  - rear out sound card connectors, 687
  - socketed Op Amp chips, 689
  - world clock I/O, 689
  - XLR input/output, 689
- data compression, 692-693
- definition of, 28
- drivers, 693
- frequency response, 680
- history of, 682
- integrated audio chipsets, 694
- Microsoft Windows audio support, 682
  - 3D gaming standards, 684-685
  - core audio APIs, 683-684
  - DirectX, 683
  - EAX (environmental audio extensions), 685

        - legacy audio support, 685-686
        - OpenAL, 684
    - MIDI support features, 691
    - monophonic/stereophonic, 691
    - sampling, 681-682
    - signal processing methods, 688
    - SNR (signal-to-noise ratio), 681
    - Sound Blaster 682
    - Sound Blaster Pro, 682
    - sound production features, 693
    - sound properties, 680
    - total harmonic distortion, 680
    - troubleshooting, 694
        - advanced features, 697
        - low volume, 695-696
        - no sound, 695
        - problems playing specific file formats, 696
        - scratchy sound, 697
        - speakers, 696
        - startup problems, 697
        - with Device Manager, 698
    - USB-based audio processors, 689-690
    - volume control, 690-691

Sound Forge, 693

source (MOSFETs), 12

South Bridge chipsets, 186-187

spatial streams, 811

S/PDIF sound card connectors, 688

SpeakEasy, 795

speakers
    - amplification, 698
    - connectors, 237
    - DBB (dynamic bass boost), 699
    - explained, 698
    - frequency response, 698
    - interference, 699
    - satellite speakers, 699
    - sleep feature, 699
    - surround sound, 699-700
    - total harmonic distortion, 698
    - troubleshooting, 696
    - volume control, 699
    - watts, 698

Specialized Products Company, 1004

speculative execution, 64-65

speed
    - 56Kbps modems, 792
    - broadband technology, 789
    - CD drives
        - access times, 598
        - buffers/cache, 598
        - CAV (constant angular velocity) technology, 593
        - CLV (constant linear velocity) technology, 593-595
        - data transfer rates, 593
        - DMA and Ultra-DMA, 598
        - table of CD-ROM drive speeds and transfer rates, 595
    - CD-R, 543
    - DVD drives, 595-598
    - HDDs (hard disk drives)
        - access times, 503
        - average seek times, 502
        - cache programs, 503-504
        - interleave, 504
        - latency, 503
        - transfer rates, 500-502
    - IEEE 1394, 723-725
    - memory speed
    - cache, 60
        - clock speeds, 333
        - cycle times, 333
        - DDR SDRAM, 339-340
        - DDR2 SDRAM, 341-342
        - DDR3 SDRAM, 343-344
        - DDR4 SDRAM, 345
        - GHz (gigahertz), 332
        - flash memory cards, 519-520
        - interleaving, 336
        - MHz (megahertz), 332
        - module speeds, 357
        - nanoseconds, 332
        - processor bus speeds, 333-335
        - SDRAM, 338
    - NICs (network interface cards), 815
    - overclocking, 133-134
        - bus speeds and multipliers, 140
        - CPU voltage settings, 142
        - modern PC clocks, 136-138
        - pitfalls, 140-142
        - quartz crystals, 134-136
        - Sandy Bridge and Ivy Bridge processors, 142
        - tips and guidelines, 138-139
        - unlocking cores, 139-140
    - processors, 49-53
    - speed locking, 294
    - USB (Universal Serial Bus), 723-725
    - Wi-Fi networks, 813
    - video RAM, 622

speed locking, 294

SpeedFan, 991

SPGA (staggered pin grid array), 74

spills on keyboards, cleaning, 756

spin-coating process (CD-R), 540

spindle motors, 495-496

Spindle Synchronization (SPSYNC) signals, 393

spin rates (HDDs), 467

spin-valve heads, 446-447

Spitfire (Duron), 118

splash screens, 275

SPS (standby power supply), 922-923
SPSYNC (Spindle Synchronization) signals, 393
sputtered thin-film media, 484-485
sputtering, 444, 485
SRAM (static RAM). ***See also*** **cache**
  compared to DRAM, 329
  explained, 329
  hits/misses, 330
  Level 1 cache, 330
  Level 2 cache, 330
  Level 3 cache, 331
SSDs (solid state drives)
  applications, 515
  configuration
    automatic drive detection, 966
    explained, 962-963
  definition of, 511
  Flash-based SSDs, 512-513
  installation, 963-965
  partition alignment, 515
  SLC (single-level cell) versus MLC (multilevel cell), 513-514
  SSD awareness in Windows, 514
  TRIM command, 514-515
  virtual SSD (RAMdisk), 512
SSE (Streaming SIMD Extensions), 63-64
SSFDC (solid state floppy disk card), 509
SSIDs, 834
Stabilant 22a, 744, 1014
staggered pin grid array (SPGA), 74
standard parallel ports, 736-737
standard recording, 478
standard thick client, 933
standard thin client, 933
standby power supply, 922-923
Standby state (APM), 905
Stanley Supply & Services, 1000, 1004
star topology, 827, 833
StarBand, 786
start bits, 730
start-stop communications, 790
startup process, troubleshooting, 697
Static Column memory, 335-336
static contrast ratio, 660
static electricity, 1018
static-filled sound, troubleshooting, 697
static RAM. ***See*** **SRAM**
status LEDs (broadband devices), 797
stepper motors, 487-488
stereophonic sound cards. ***See*** **sound cards**
STFT, 662
stop bits, 791
STOP errors, 1025
stored-program technique, 10
STP (shielded twisted pair) cables, 817-818
Streaming SIMD Extensions (SSE), 63-64
striping disks, 434-435
STR (Suspend to RAM), 910
stuck keyswitches, troubleshooting, 755
stuck pixels (LCDs), 675
subcode bytes (CDs), 534
substrate material, magnetic storage, 441
Super Audio CD (SA-CD), 577-578
Super Density (SD) disks, 548
Super I/O chips, 186, 228
Super-IPS (in-place switching), 662
Super Video CDs, 576
Superchips, 272
superparamagnetic limit, 485
superscalar technology, 94, 61-62
SuperSpeed USB (USB 3.0), 713-715
supertiling, 648
supervisor passwords, 311
Supervisor Password setting (Security menu), 311
surge protectors, 921
surprise removal, 725
surround sound, 699-700
Suspend state (APM), 905
Suspend to RAM (STR), 910
swabs, 1015
Swan Floppy Drive feature (BIOS Setup), 316
switches, 827-828, 842
  address storing, 828
  compared to hubs, 828-829
  dual-speeds, 829
  front panel AC switches, 868-869
  front panel motherboard-controlled, 866-868
  integral AC switches, 868
  managed/unmanaged, 828
  placement of, 830-831
  ports, 830
  power-saving features, 829
switching power supply
  loads, 894-895
    apparent power, 899
    inductive, 898
    load regulation, 898
    maximum load current, 898
    minimum load current, 898
    resistive, 898
    working power, 899
  overview, 846, 893-894
Symantec Norton Ghost, 506
Symmetrical DSL (SDSL), 781
Sync sector field, 470

synchronous DRAM (SDRAM), 337-338

Synchronous Graphics RAM (SGRAM), 621

synthetic benchmarks, 49

SYSmark 2012, 52-53

system assembly

- cables, 941, 969
- cases, 933-934, 953-956
- cover assembly, 969
- custom PC configurations, 931-933
  - audio/video editing systems, 932
  - custom PC build guide, 933
  - gaming systems, 932
  - graphics systems, 931
  - home server systems, 932-933
  - home theater systems, 932
  - standard thick client, 933
  - standard thin client, 933
  - virtualization systems, 932
- documentation of physical configuration, 946
- ESD (electrostatic discharge) protection, 945
- expansion cards, 969
- explained, 929-931, 942-943
- hardware resources, 942
- HDDs (hard disk drives)
  - choosing, 938-939
  - drive configuration, 962-963
  - drive installation, 963-965
- heatsinks, 941, 946-952
- input devices, 939
- memory modules, 952
- miscellaneous hardware, 942
- motherboards
  - BIOS, 936
  - cables, 961-962
  - chipsets, 935-936
  - Desktop Form Factors website, 935
  - explained, 935
  - integrated adapters, 938
  - memory, 936-937
  - mounting in case, 953-956
  - ports, 937-938
  - UEFI (Unified Extensible Firmware Interface), 936
- operating system installation, 971-972
- power supply
  - connecting, 958-961
  - modular power supplies, 958
- preparation, 943-944
- processors, 934, 946-952
- required tools, 943-944
- software resources, 942
- sound cards, 940
- SSDs (solid state drives)
  - automatic drive detection, 966
  - drive configuration, 962-963
  - drive installation, 963-965
- troubleshooting, 972-973
- video adapters, 940
  - installation, 967-968
  - removing, 968

system boards. *See* motherboards

system boot process. *See* boot process

System Bus Speed setting (BIOS main menu), 295

System Date setting (BIOS main menu), 295

System Fan Control setting (Fan Control Configuration menu), 309

System Information for Windows (SIW), 416, 1032

system interface (video)

- AGP (Accelerated Graphics Port), 625-626
- overview, 624
- PCIe (PCI Express), 626

system logical memory layout, 374-376

System Management Interrupt (SMI), 61

System Management Mode (SMM), 60-61

System Management (SMBIOS) BIOS Setup, 306

system memory. *See* RAM (random access memory)

System Memory Speed setting (BIOS main menu), 295

system passwords, 311

system resources, 254

- DMA (direct memory access) channels, 259
- I/O port addresses
  - chipset-based device port addresses, 259-260
  - motherboard-based device port addresses, 259-260
- IRQs (interrupt request channels), 254
  - 8-bit ISA bus interrupts, 255
  - 16-bit ISA/EISA/MCA bus interrupts, 256-257
  - Advanced Programmable Interrupt, 258
  - conflicts, 259
  - edge-triggered interrupt sensing, 255
  - interrupt sharing, 255
  - maskable interrupts, 255
  - PCI interrupts, 257-258
  - PCI IRQ Steering, 255

System Restore, 1012

system startup, 969-971

System Time setting (BIOS main menu), 295
system tray, 725
system types, 26-27

T

T-1 connections, 788
tables, GPT (GUID Partition Table), 432-434
TAC Design Guide, 151
tailgates, 384
Tanisys, 369, 1009
TAO (Track-at-Once) recording, 573
tape drives, 523
TCP/IP, 837
Teal, Gordon, 6
Technical Committee T13, 380
telephony connectors, 238
temperature acclimation (HDDs), 495
temperature probes, 1010
tessellation (DirectX), 647
test equipment
  DMMs (digital multimeters), 1002, 1005-1007
  electrical testing equipment, 1005
  electric screwdrivers, 1009
  logic probes, 1007-1008
  loopback connector, 1005
  memory testers, 1008-1009
  outlet testers, 1008
testing
  burn-in testing, 990-991
  cables, 754
  manufacturing tests, 319
  monitors, 671-674
  NICs (network interface cards), 841
  power supply
    back probing, 915-916
    digital infrared thermometers, 916
    DMMs (digital multimeters), 913-916
    variable voltage transformers, 917
  processors, 74, 88
  test equipment
    DMMs (digital multimeters), 1002, 1005-1007
    electrical testing equipment, 1005
    electric screwdrivers, 1009
    logic probes, 1007-1008
    loopback connector, 1005
    memory testers, 1008-1009
    outlet testers, 1008
  video adapters, 671
Tether, 795
tethering, 795
texture mapping, 643-645
TF (thin film) heads, 444-445
TFT (thin film transistor) arrays, 661-662
TFX12V power supply, 860
THD (total harmonic distortion), 680, 698
theater surround sound, 699-700
thermal interface material (TIM), 949
thermal recalibration (servo mechanisms), 490
thermal resistance, 146
thermal shock, 908
thermally advantaged chassis
  cooling fans, 149
  maximum heatsink inlet temperatures, 150
  processor ducts, 151
  specifications, 150-151
thermometers
  digital infrared thermometers, 916
  infrared thermometers, 1010
thick Ethernet coaxial cables, 816-817
Thicknet, 816-817
thin Ethernet coaxial cables, 817
thin film (TF) heads, 444-445
thin-film media, 484-485
thin film transistor (TFT) arrays, 661-662
thin form factor (TFX12V) power supply, 860
ThinkPad keyboards, 757
Thinnet, 817
third-party memory modules, 364
Third SATA Master setting (Drive Configuration menu), 304
Thomas, Thampy, 114
threads, 67
thumb flash memory devices, 507
Thunderbolt Technology, 728-729
TimeIt utility, 724
timeline of computer history, 5-9
TIM (thermal interface material), 949
TLB (translation lookaside buffer), 60
TMDS (Transition Minimized Differential Signaling), 629-630
Token-Ring, 826
topologies
  bus topology, 825
  explained, 824-825
  point-to-point topology, 833
  ring topology, 826
  star topology, 827, 833
toroids, 1019
Torture Test (GIMPs), 991
Torx drivers, 1001
total harmonic distortion (THD), 680, 698

Total Memory setting
  BIOS main menu, 295
  Memory Configuration menu, 298
touch keyboards, 747
Touch Mouse (Microsoft), 763-764
touch pads, 768-769
touch-sensitive mice, 763
touchscreen technology, 770-771
tower cases, 934
Track-at-Once (TAO) recording, 573
track following systems, 488
track pads, 768-769
trackballs, 758, 769-770
TrackPoint keyboards (ThinkPad), 757
TrackPoint pointing device, 765-768
tracks. ***See also*** **sectors**
  CDs, 530-531
  defined, 470
  densities, 468
  DVDs, 550-551
  HDDs, 466
trailers (sectors), 471
transceivers (DSL), 780
transfer modes (SATA), 409-410
transfer rates
  CD drives, 593
  DMA (direct memory access), 397
  HDDs (hard disk drives), 463, 500-502
  PATA DMA (direct memory access) transfer modes, 396-397
  PATA PIO (Programmed I/O) transfer modes, 396
  SATA (Serial ATA) transfer rates, 399
transformers, variable voltage transformers, 917
transient response (power supply), 897
transistors
  Graphene-based transistors, 13
  invention of, 11
  MOSFETs (Metal Oxide Semiconductor Field Effect Transistors), 11-12
  PMOS transistors, 12
  silicon transistors, 12
transition cells, 442
Transition Minimized Differential Signaling (TMDS), 629-630
translation
  CHS bit-shift translation, 421-423
  LBA-assist translation, 425-427
  TLB (translation lookaside buffer), 60
Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP), 837
tray load mechanism (CD/DVD drives), 599-600
tri-channel memory, 356-357
Tri-Gate transistors, 13
TRIM command, 514-515
triodes, 11
Tripp Lite, 925
troubleshooting. ***See also*** **testing**
  3TB drives, 1032-1033
  adapter cards, 1025, 1034
  audio
    advanced features, 697
    with Device Manager, 698
    low volume, 695-696
    no sound, 695
    problems playing specific file formats, 696
    scratchy sound, 697
    speakers, 696
    startup problems, 697
  basic guidelines, 1021
  BD (Blu-ray), 606
  BIOS errors, 319-320
    AMI BIOS error messages, 322
    Award BIOS error messages, 322
    Compaq BIOS error messages, 322
    IBM BIOS error messages, 320-321
    Phoenix BIOS error messages, 322
  bootable CDs, 606
  boot process, 1024, 1031
  bootstrap approach, 1023-1024
  broadband service interruptions, 795
  broadband signal lights, 797
  BSOD (Blue Screen Of Death) errors, 989
  CD/DVD drives, 1033
    disc read failures, 602-605
    disc write failures, 604
    firmware, 607-608
    problems burning discs with Windows built-in recording, 605
    slow drive speeds, 604-605
  CMOS batteries, 928
  DVD errors, 554-555
  emergency flash BIOS recovery, 282-285
  errors. *See* error messages
  ESD (electrostatic discharge), 945
  Fatal Exception errors, 1026
  frozen/locked systems, 1030-1034
  hard drives, 1030-1031
  HDDs (hard disk drives), 1032-1034
  IRQs (interrupt request channels) conflicts, 259

- keyboards, 1027
  - cleaning, 755-756
  - connectors, 755
  - defective cables, 754-755
  - stuck keyswitches, 755
- known-good spare technique, 1022
- maintenance tools, 999-1000
  - 2 ½”ATA drive cables and adapters, 1003
  - 3 ½” drive enclosure, 1003
  - cleaning materials, 1002
  - data transfer cables and adapters, 1003
  - DMMs (digital multimeters), 1002, 1005-1007
  - electrical testing equipment, 1005
  - electric screwdrivers, 1002, 1009
  - ESD (electrostatic discharge) protection kits, 1003
  - files, 1002
  - flashlights, 1002
  - hemostats, 1002
  - infrared thermometers, 1010
  - lithium coin cell batteries, 1003
  - logic probes, 1007-1008
  - loopback connector, 1005
  - markers/pens, 1002
  - memory testers, 1008-1009
  - needle-nose pliers, 1002
  - nut drivers, 1000
  - nylon cable-ties, 1002
  - outlet testers, 1008
  - parts grabbers, 1000, 1011
  - POST cards, 1002
  - PS/2 Y adapter, 1003
  - safety, 1003-1004
  - screwdrivers, 1000
  - spare parts, 1003
  - temperature probes, 1010
  - Torx drivers, 1001
  - tweezers, 1000
  - USB/FireWire cable adapter, 1003
  - vises/clamps, 1002
  - Windows 98/98SE or Me Startup floppy, 1002
  - Windows 2000/XP bootable CD, 1002
  - wire cutters, 1002
  - wire strippers, 1002
- MBR errors, 319-323
  - Error loading operating system, 323-324
  - Invalid partition table, 323
  - Missing operating system, 324
- memory
  - ECC (error correcting code), 360-361
  - hard fails, 357
  - parity checking, 359-360
  - soft errors, 357-359
- mice, 764-765
- microphones, 701
- Missing operating system error message, 1031
- modems, 1026-1027
- monitors, 672-677, 1027-1028
  - bad pixels, 675-676
  - dead pixels, 675
  - monitor adjustments, 674-675
  - monitor repairs, 677
  - monitor testing, 673-674
  - stuck pixels, 675
- motherboard installation, 1034
- POST (power on self test). *See* POST
- power supply, 911-912, 1025
  - diagnostic procedures, 912
  - with DMMs. *See* DMMs (digital multimeters)
  - inadequate cooling, 913
  - overloaded power supply, 912-913
- processors, 88, 151-153
- processor upgrades, 1029-1030
- RAM (random access memory), 368-372, 1031-1034
  - with diagnostic software, 368-369
  - memory defect isolation procedures, 372-374
  - with POST (Power On Self Test), 368
  - step-by-step process, 370-372
  - types of errors, 370
- reinstallation versus replacement, 1021
- scientific method, 1021-1022
- software, 1024
- sound, 1027
- sound cards, 694
- STOP errors, 1025
- system assembly, 972-973
- USB (Universal Serial Bus), 1033
- video adapters, 670-671
- video cards, 1028-1029
- video drivers, 672
- Windows shutdown, 1026
- wireless input devices, 773

TRS-80 Model 1 computers, 31

true ROM (read-only memory), 270

true UPS (uninterruptible power supply), 923

Trusted Platform Module setting (Peripheral Configuration menu), 302

tubes, 11

TurboCore, 617

Turing, Alan, 5

Turing Machine, 5

turning off/on systems
  electrical costs, 908-909
  S3 (Suspend To RAM) state, 910
  S4 (Hibernate) state, 910
  thermal shock, 908
TV display interfaces, 641-642
tweezers, 1000
twisted-pair cables, 817
  building, 820-824
  cable distance limitations, 824
  Category 3 cable, 818
  Category 5 cable, 819
  Category 6 cable, 819
  Category 6a cable, 819
  crossover cables, 821
  grounding loops, 818
  STP (shielded twisted pair), 817-818
  wiring standards, 820-821
Typematic Delay (Msec) feature (BIOS Setup), 317
typematic functions, 749
Typematic Rate feature (BIOS Setup), 317
Typematic Rate Setting feature (BIOS Setup), 317

U

u-pipes, 94
UART (Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter) chip, 733
UDF (Universal Disk Format), 574, 585-586
UDF Reader 2.5, 585
UDF Volume Reader 7.1.0.95, 585
UDMA (Ultra-DMA), 383-386
Udpixel, 676
UEFI (Unified Extensible Firmware Interface), 273, 936
  BIOS limitations, 290-291
  explained, 289-290
  support for, 291-292
UEFI Boot setting (Boot menu), 315
UHA (Ultra High Aperture), 662
UHS (Ultra High Speed) Class marking, 520
UL (Underwriters Laboratories)
  power supply safety certifications, 900
  surge protector standards, 921
ULi Electronics chipsets, 215-216
Ultimate Boot CD, 369, 991
Ultra-DMA, 397 598
Ultra High Aperture (UHA), 662
Ultra High Speed (UHS) Class marking, 520
UltraNav keyboards (ThinkPad), 757
UMA (unified memory architecture), 611
«Understanding SD Association Speed Ratings» (Lexar), 520
Underwriters Laboratories (UL)
  power supply safety certifications, 900
  surge protector standards, 921
Unicomp, 746
Unified Extensible Firmware Interface. *See* UEFI
unified memory architecture (UMA), 611
UniGine Heaven DX11 benchmark utility, 647
uninterruptible power supply (UPS), 923-925
UNIVAC (Universal Automatic Computer), 10
Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART) chip, 733
Universal Automatic Computer (UNIVAC), 10
Universal Disk Format (UDF), 574, 585-586
universal power supplies, 896
Universal Serial Bus. *See* USB
Unlock Intel(R) QST setting (Fan Control Configuration menu), 309
unlocking cores, 139-140
unmanaged switches, 828
unrecoverable errors, 472
unshielded twisted pair cables. *See* UTP cables
untwisted-pair cables, 817
updating
  CD/DVD firmware, 607-608
  processor microcode, 88
Upgrading and Repairing Servers (Mueller), 703
uplink ports, 830
UPS (uninterruptible power supply), 923-925
USB (Universal Serial Bus)
  BIOS Setup settings, 308-309
  CD/DVD drives, 599
  compared to IEEE 1394 (FireWire), 722-725
  connectors
    Mini/Micro A/B connectors, 712
    mini plugs and sockets, 711
    Series A/B connectors, 712
  explained, 704-705
  functions, 706
  header connector pinout, 234-235
  hot-plugging, 725-728
  hubs, 704-706
  keyboards, 753-754
  legacy support, 748
  maximum cable lengths, 708
  mice interfaces, 762
  power usage, 707
  speed of, 723-725

  - troubleshooting, 1033
  - USB 1.1, 707
    - connectors, 710-713
    - technical details, 705-708
  - USB 2.0, 707
    - connectors, 710-713
    - data rates, 709
    - technical details, 705-708
  - USB 3.0, 713-715
  - USB-based audio processors, 689-690
  - USB flash drives, 516-517
  - USB On-The-Go, 716
  - Windows USB support, 717-718
  - WUSB (Wireless USB), 716-717

USB 2.0 Legacy Support setting (USB Configuration menu), 308

USB 2.0 setting (USB Configuration menu), 308

USB 3.0 Controller setting (USB Configuration menu), 308

USB 3.0 Hub Presence setting (USB Configuration menu), 308

USB Boot setting (Boot menu), 315

USB Configuration menu (BIOS Setup), 308-309

USB EHCI Controller setting (USB Configuration menu), 308

USB/FireWire cable adapter, 1003

USB Function setting (USB Configuration menu), 308

USB-IF (USB Implementer's Forum), 709

USB Implementer's Forum (USB-IF), 709

USB Legacy setting (USB Configuration menu), 308

USB Mass Storage Emulation Type setting (Boot menu), 315

USB Ports setting (USB Configuration menu), 308

USB ZIP Emulation Type setting (USB Configuration menu), 308

Use Automatic Mode setting (Drive Configuration menu), 304

Use Maximum Multiplier setting (BIOS Maintenance menu), 294

User access Level setting (Security menu), 311

user-created bootable media, upgrading flash ROM from, 280-281

user passwords, 311

User Password setting (Security menu), 312

user-supported diagnostic software, 991

UTP (unshielded twisted-pair) cables, 817
- building, 820-824
- cable distance limitations, 824
- Category 3 cable, 818
- Category 5 cable, 819
- Category 6 cable, 819
- Category 6a cable, 819
- crossover cables, 821
- wiring standards, 820-821

U-verse, 838

V

V-Link architecture, 189

v-pipes, 94

V.90 modem standard, 793

V.92 modem standard, 793-794

vacuum cleaners, cleaning systems with, 755, 1014

vacuum tubes, 11

vacuum tube triode, 5

variable voltage transformers, 917

VBR (volume boot record), 1031

VCD (Video CD), 576

VDSL (Very High-Data-Rate DSL), 781

vendor-unique commands (ATA), 411

vertical blanking interval, 657

vertical frequency, 657

vertical recording, 459

vertical scan frequency, 665

vertices, 644

Very High-Data-Rate DSL (VDSL), 781

VESA (Video Electronic Standards Association), 247, 629

VGA (Video Graphics Array), 627-629, 667

VIA Technologies
- chipsets, 189, 216, 226
- ITX motherboards, 176-177
- Mini-ITX motherboards, 176-177
- VIA VT, 69

video adapters. *See also* 3D graphics accelerators
- BIOS Setup settings, 307-308
- chipsets
  - identifying, 619-620
  - video processor, 619
- choosing, 940
- components, 617-618
- DAC (digital-to-analog converter), 624
- definition of, 610
- heterogeneous adapters, 668
- homogeneous adapters, 668
- installation, 967-968
- integrated video/motherboard chipsets, 611
  - chipsets with integrated video for 64-bit AMD processors, 614-616

    - graphics chip market share, 612
    - Intel chipset integrated video, 612-613
    - third-party chipsets with integrated video for Intel processors, 614
  - optimizing system for, 932
  - overview, 610
  - processors with integrated video, 616-617
  - removing, 968
  - testing, 671
  - troubleshooting, 670-671
  - types of, 610-611
  - UMA (unified memory architecture), 611
  - video BIOS, 618
  - video drivers, 672
  - video RAM, 620-621
    - DDR SDRAM, 621
    - GDDR2 SDRAM, 621
    - GDDR3 SDRAM, 622
    - GDDR4 SDRAM, 622
    - GDDR5 SDRAM, 622
    - RAM calculations, 622-623
    - SGRAM, 621
    - speed, 622
    - video memory bus width, 623-624
    - VRAM, 621
    - WRAM, 621

video BIOS, 618

video cards
  - definition of, 28
  - onboard BIOS, 274
  - troubleshooting, 1028-1029

Video CD (VCD), 576

Video Configuration menu (BIOS Setup), 307-308

video display interfaces
  - AGP (Accelerated Graphics Port), 625-626
  - digital display interfaces
    - DisplayPort, 636-640
    - DMS-59, 632
    - DVI (Digital Video Interface), 630-632
    - HDMI (High Definition Multimedia Interface), 633-636
    - overview, 629
  - overview, 624-627
  - PCIe (PCI Express), 626
  - TV display interfaces, 641-642
  - VGA (Video Graphics Array), 627-629

video drivers, 672

Video Electronic Standards Association (VESA), 247, 629

Video Graphics Array (VGA), 627-629

video monitors. *See* monitors

video RAM (random access memory), 620-621
  - DDR SDRAM, 621
  - GDDR2 SDRAM, 621
  - GDDR3 SDRAM, 622
  - GDDR4 SDRAM, 622
  - GDDR5 SDRAM, 622
  - RAM calculations, 622-623
  - SGRAM, 621
  - speed, 622
  - video memory bus width, 623-624
  - VRAM, 621
  - WRAM, 621

Video Repost setting (Power menu), 313

View Event Log setting (Event Logging menu), 307

viewable image size (monitors), 650

vintagecalculators.com, 20

virgin CDs, 540

virtual PC environments, 685-686

virtual real mode, 91

virtual SSD (RAMdisk), 512

virtualization
  - hardware-assisted virtualization support, 68-69
  - legacy audio support, 685-686
  - optimizing system for, 932

Virus Warning feature (BIOS Setup), 316

viruses, CIH, 278

vises, 1002

visible surface determination, 645

Vista/Win7 Codec Packages, 581

VL-Bus, 247

voice-coil actuators, 488-489

volatile storage, 326

voltage regulator module (VRM), 879-880

voltage settings (processors), 142

volume
  - sound cards, 690-691
  - speaker volume control, 699
  - troubleshooting, 695-696

volume boot record (VBR), 1031

VOPT, 1012

VRAM (Video RAM), 621

VRM (voltage regulator module), 879-880

VT Technology setting (Security menu), 312

W

wafers, 72

wafers (processors), 70

wait states, 49, 330

Wake on LAN connectors, 238

Wake on LAN from S5 setting (Power menu), 313

Wake on Modem Ring setting (Power menu), 313
Wake on PCI PME setting (Power menu), 313
Wake on PS/2 Mouse from S3 setting (Power menu), 313
Wake on Ring connectors, 238
WANs (wide area networks), 800. *See also* networks
war driving, 833
WASAPI (Windows Audio Session API) API, 683
Watchdog Timer setting (Chipset Configuration menu), 300
waterblocks, 941
watts, 698
Waveform audio sampling, 681-682
wavetable adapters, 691
WD1003 commands, 410
wear leveling, 491
WECA (Wireless Ethernet Compatibility Alliance), 808
wedge servo mechanisms, 491-492
WEP (wired equivalent privacy), 834-835
Western Digital
  ATA. *See* ATA (AT Attachment)
  WD1003/WD1006 (IBM AT) 512-byte sector format, 471-472
White Book standard (Video CD), 576
white-box systems, 26
white power switch connector wires, 869
Wi-Fi Alliance, 808
Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA), 834
Wi-Fi (Wireless Fidelity)
  802.11a standard, 810
  802.11ac standard, 812
  802.11b standard, 808-810
  802.11g standard, 810-811
  802.11n standard, 811-812
  access points, 831, 842
  DHCP support, 835-836
  explained, 807-808
  network speeds, 813
  NICs (network interface cards), 832
  point-to-point topology, 833
  security, 833-835
  signal boosters, 832
  specialized antennas, 832
  star topology, 833
  users per access point, 836
  wireless bridges, 832
  wireless repeaters, 832
wide area networks (WANs), 800. *See also* networks
width
  data buses, 26-27
  processor specifications, 35-37
WildBlue, 785-786
Wilkes, Maurice, 6
Winchester drives, 462
Window RAM (WRAM), 621
Windows 3.x drive limitations, 431
Windows 7
  103/104-key keyboards, 740-742
  audio
    3D gaming audio standards, 684-685
    core audio APIs, 683-684
    EAX (environmental audio extensions), 685
    legacy audio support, 685-686
    OpenAL, 684
  boot process, 998
  drive limitations, 431
  networking with, 843-844
  SSD (solid-state drive) awareness, 514
  USB support, 718
Windows 8
  103/104-key keyboards, 740-742
  audio
    3D gaming audio standards, 684-685
    core audio APIs, 683-684
    EAX (environmental audio extensions), 685
    OpenAL, 684
  boot process, 998-999
  drive limitations, 431
  Fast Startup mode, 998-999
  installation, 972
  networking with, 843-844
  Personal Use License for System Builder license, 930
  SSD (solid-state drive) awareness, 514
  USB support, 718
  Windows 8 Codec Package, 581
Windows 9x
  103/104-key keyboards, 740-742
  boot process, 997
  drive limitations, 431
  USB support, 717-718
Windows 2000
  103/104-key keyboards, 740-742
  boot process, 997-998
  drive limitations, 431
Windows Audio Session API (WASAPI) API, 683
Windows Disk Cleanup tool, 1012
Windows executable upgrades (flash ROM), 279
Windows Me
  103/104-key keyboards, 740-742
  boot process, 997
  drive limitations, 431

Windows Memory Diagnostic, 369, 1009
Windows NT drive limitations, 431
Windows Server 2003 Resource Kit Tools, 724
Windows Vista
  audio
    3D gaming audio standards, 684-685
    core audio APIs, 683-684
    EAX (environmental audio extensions), 685
    legacy audio support, 685-686
    OpenAL, 684
  boot process, 998
  networking with, 843-844
  USB support, 718
Windows XP
  103/104-key keyboards, 740-742
  boot process, 997-998
  USB support, 718
  Windows XP Video Decoder Checkup Utility, 581
winload.exe, 998
wire cutters, 1002
wired equivalent privacy (WEP), 834-835
Wireless-A, 810
Wireless-AC, 812
wireless bridges, 832
wireless broadband, 783
Wireless Ethernet Compatibility Alliance (WECA), 808
Wireless Fidelity. *See* Wi-Fi
Wireless-G, 810-811
wireless input devices
  Bluetooth, 772
  IR (infrared), 771
  power management, 772
  proprietary radio frequency, 771
  troubleshooting, 773
Wireless Internet Service Providers Association (WISPA), 783
Wireless Internet Service Provider (WISP), 783
Wireless-N, 811-812
WirelessNetView (Nirsoft), 1020
wireless networks
  Bluetooth, 813-814, 833
  security, 834
  topologies, 833
  Wi-Fi (Wireless Fidelity)
    802.11a standard, 810
    802.11ac standard, 812
    802.11b standard, 808-810
    802.11g standard, 810-811
    802.11n standard, 811-812
    access points, 831
    antennas, 832
    bridges, 832
    DHCP support, 835-836
    explained, 807-808
    network speeds, 813
    NICs (network interface cards), 832
    repeaters, 832
    security, 833-835
    signal boosters, 832
    users per access point, 836
wireless PANs (WPANs), 800
wireless repeaters, 832
Wireless USB (WUSB), 716-717
wireless WANs (WWANs), 800
wire strippers, 1002
WISPA (Wireless Internet Service Providers Association), 783
WISP (Wireless Internet Service Provider), 783
wobbled land and groove recording, 561
working power, 899
world clock I/O sound card connectors, 689
WORM (write once, read many), 539
Wozniak, Steve, 7, 32
WPANs (wireless PANs), 800
wpa_supplicant, 835
WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access), 834
WRAM (Window RAM), 621
wrap plugs, 1005
writable CDs. *See* CD-R discs; CD-RW discs
write-back cache, 370, 725
write once, read many (WORM), 539
write process, 442-443
write protection for flash ROM, 278
write-through cache, 60
write-through operations, 725
WTX motherboards, 164
WUSB (Wireless USB), 716-717
WWANs (wireless wide area networks), 800

X

XD Technology setting (Security menu), 312
xD-Picture Card, 511
xDSL. *See* DSL (digital subscriber line)
Xebec 1210/1220 (IBM XT) 512-byte sector format, 471
XLR input/output sound card connectors, 689
XOP, 64
XT motherboards, 156-157

Y

Yellow Book (CD-ROM) standard, 571-572

yields, 73

Z

Z80 processor (Zilog), 31

ZBR (zoned-bit recording), 478-480

Z-CLV (zoned CLV) technology, 595

zero insertion force (ZIF) sockets, 74, 78

Zero Link technology, 564

Ziegler, J. F., 358

ZIF (zero insertion force) sockets, 74, 78

Zilog Z80 processor, 31

ZIP Emulation Type setting (Boot menu), 315

zoned-bit recording (ZBR), 478-480

zoned CLV (Z-CLV) technology, 595

zones, 478

Zuse, Konrad, 5